

Gem

Connect

الصف السادس الابتدائى

الفصل الدراسى الأول

Prepared by: Senior English Teachers

6

100٪ إجابات

نزل إجابات الكتاب بصيغة PDF







www.aladwaa.com Follow Us







Contents





Revision on Language

The Present Simple Tense زمن المضارع البسيط

We use the present simple tense to talk about habits, routines, and things we do every day.

نستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط للتحدث عن العادات والروتين والأشياء التى نقوم بها كل يوم.

Affirmative sentence: الجملة المثبتة:

(I, We, You, They, اسم جمع) + (inf.) مصدر الفعل ... .

(He, She, It, اسم مفرد) + (inf.) + (s/es/ies) ... .



I walk to school every day.

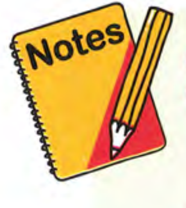
أنا أمشى إلى المدرسة كل يوم.





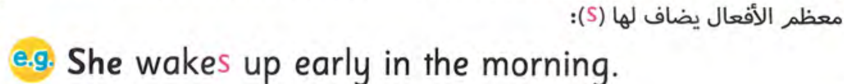
He does karate on Fridays.

هو يلعب الكاراتيه فى أيام الجمعة.









معظم الأفعال يضاف لها (s):

e.g. She wakes up early in the morning.





الأفعال المنتهية بـ(ss , sh, ch, o, x) يضاف لها (es):

e.g. Dad watches TV every night.



الأفعال المنتهية بحرف (y) يسبقه حرف ساكن، يتم حذف الـ (y) ويضاف للفعل (ies):

e.g. My cousin flies to Paris every year.

Negative sentence: الجملة المنفية:

(I, We, You, They, اسم جمع) + don't + (inf.) مصدر الفعل .... .

(He, She, It, اسم مفرد) + doesn't + (inf.) مصدر الفعل .... .



I don't eat unhealthy food.

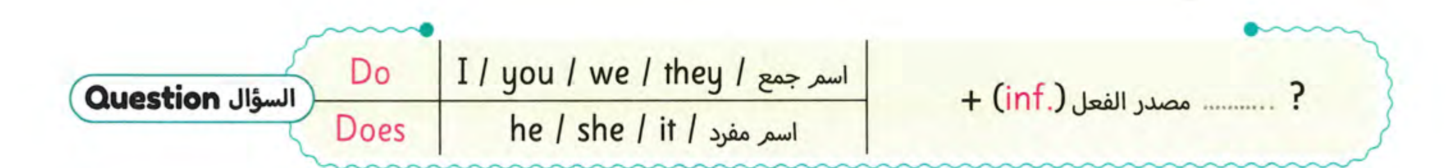
أنا لا آكل الطعام غير الصحى.



She doesn't play basketball.

هى لا تلعب كرة السلة.

Yes/No question: السؤال بـ (هل):



Question السؤال	Do	I / you / we / they / اسم جمع	+ (inf.) مصدر الفعل .... ?
	Does	he / she / it / اسم مفرد	



Answer الإجابة	Yes,	subject (الفاعل)	do / does.
	No,		don't / doesn't.

A: Do you have plants in your balcony?

هل يوجد نباتات فى شرفتك؟

B: Yes, I do.

نعم.



Wh- question: السؤال باستخدام كلمة الاستفهام:

Question word كلمة الاستفهام	do	I / you / we / they / اسم جمع	+ (inf.) مصدر الفعل ... ?
	does	he / she / it / اسم مفرد	

A: What does he wear? ماذا يرتدى؟

B: He wears a galabeya. هو يرتدى جلابية.



The Past Simple Tense زمن الماضى البسيط

We use the past simple tense to express actions that started and ended in the past.

نستخدم زمن الماضى البسيط للتعبير عن الأحداث التى بدأت وانتهت فى الماضى.

Affirmative sentence: الجملة المثبتة:

Subject + التصريف الثانى للفعل ... .

1. Regular Verbs
أفعال منتظمة

معظم الأفعال يضاف لها (ed):
walk/walked

الأفعال المنتهية بـ (e) يضاف لها (d) فقط:
move/moved

الأفعال المنتهية بحرف ساكن + (y) يضاف لها (ied) ويحذف الـ (y):
carry / carried

الأفعال المنتهية بحرف متحرك + حرف ساكن يضاف لها (ed) مع مضاعفة الحرف الساكن:
clap / clapped



She baked a birthday cake yesterday.

هى قامت بخبز تورته (كيك) عيد ميلاد بالأمس.

2. Irregular Verbs
أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past	Present	Past
see	saw	come	came	have/has	had
go	went	get	got	write	wrote
take	took	sleep	slept	drink	drank
catch	caught	do	did	break	broke

Negative sentence: الجملة المنفية:

Subject + didn't + (inf.) مصدر الفعل ... .

She didn't play video games last night.

هى لم تلعب ألعاب الفيديو الليلة الماضية.



(Verb to be) فى زمن الماضى

I/He/She/It/اسم مفرد + was/wasn't ...

She was on a boat trip last week.

كانت هى فى رحلة قارب الأسبوع الماضى.

We/They/You/اسم جمع + were/weren't ...

My friends were in the garden this afternoon.

كان أصدقائى فى الحديقة هذه الظهيرة.

Yes/No question: السؤال بـ (هل):

A: Did + subject + (inf.) مصدر الفعل .... ?

B: Yes,	subject	did.
B: No,		didn't.



A: Did you do your homework? هل قمت بعمل واجبك المنزلى؟

B: Yes, I did. نعم.



A: Did she have an ice cream? هل تناولت آيس كريم؟

B: No, she didn't. لا.

Wh- question: السؤال باستخدام كلمة الاستفهام:

A: Question word	did	subject	(inf.) ....?
B: Subject (الفاعل) + التصريف الثانى للفعل			



A: When did you visit Paris? متى قمت بزيارة باريس؟

B: I visited Paris last December.

قمت بزيارة باريس فى شهر ديسمبر الماضى.

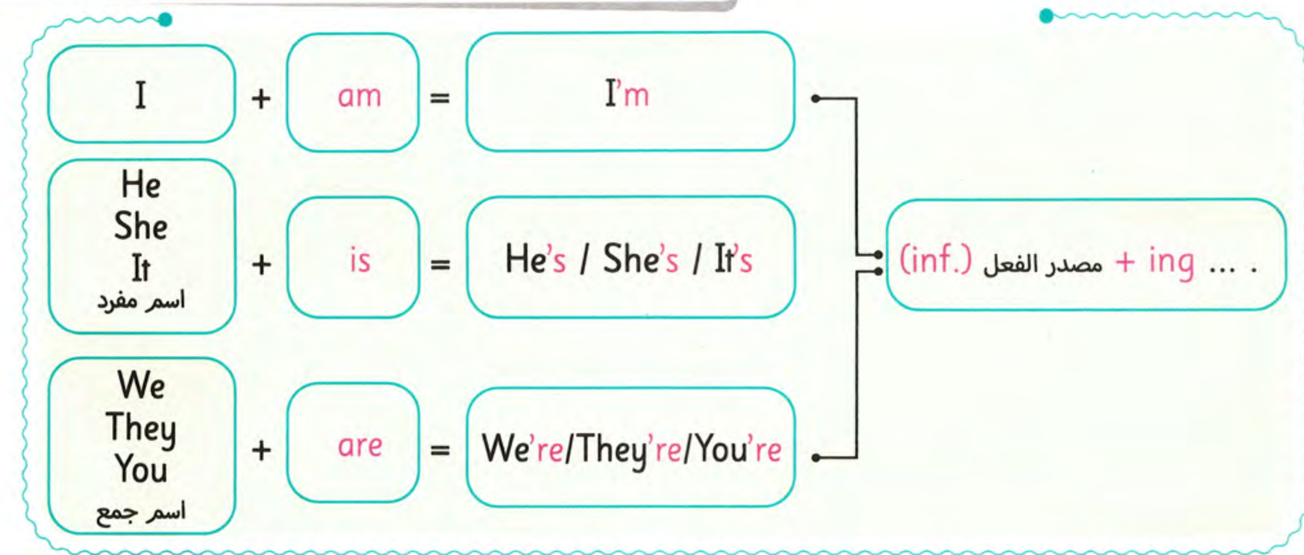
The Present Continuous Tense زمن المضارع المستمر

We use the present continuous tense to express an action which is happening right now.

نستخدم زمن المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن فعل يحدث الآن.



Affirmative sentence: الجملة المثبتة:

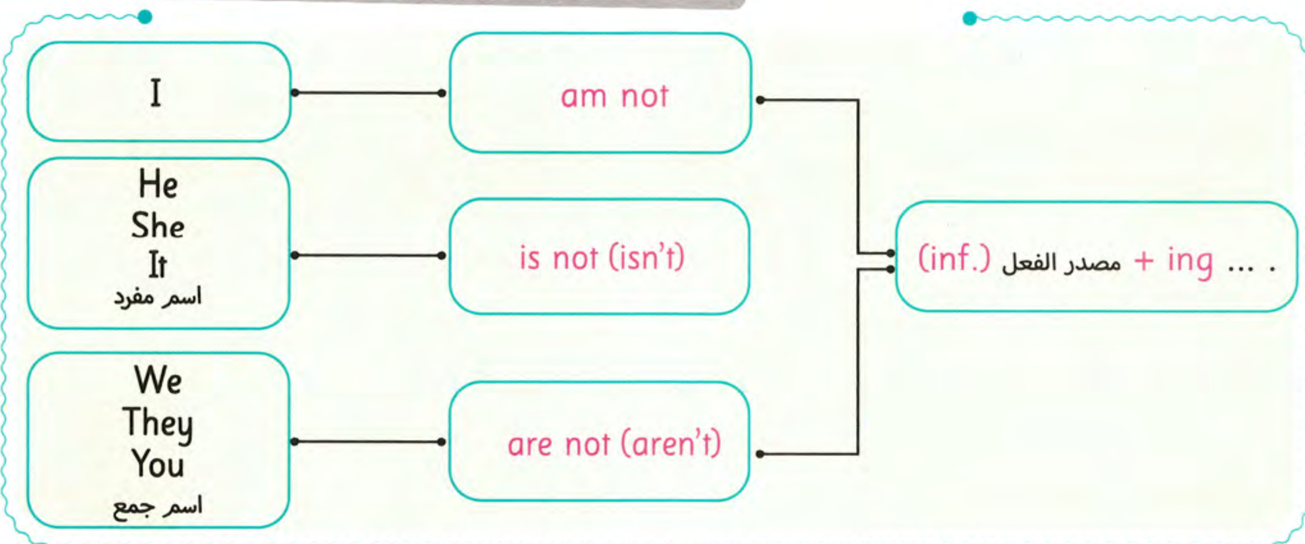




I am reading a book now.

أنا أقرأ كتابًا الان.

Negative sentence: الجملة المنفية:

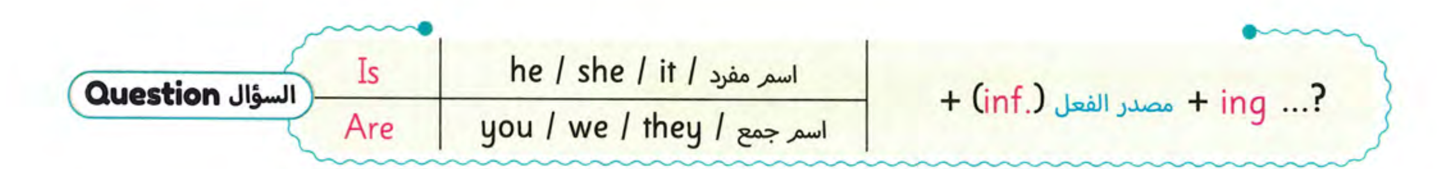




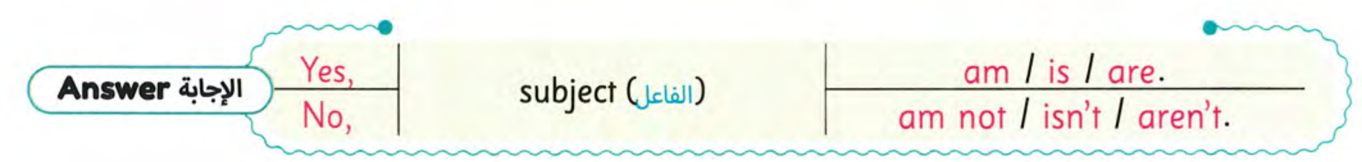
He isn't eating lunch at the moment.

هو لا يأكل طعام الغداء فى هذه اللحظه.

Yes/No question: السؤال بـ (هل):



Question السؤال	Is	he / she / it / اسم مفرد	+ (inf.) مصدر الفعل + ing ...?
	Are	you / we / they / اسم جمع	



Answer الإجابة	Yes,	subject (الفاعل)	am / is / are.
	No,		am not / isn't / aren't.

A: Is she wearing a blue dress? هل ترتدى هى فستانًا أزرق؟

B: Yes, she is. نعم.



Wh- question: السؤال باستخدام كلمة الاستفهام:

Question word كلمة الاستفهام	am/ is/ are	subject (الفاعل)	+ (inf.) مصدر الفعل + ing ?

A: What are you doing? ماذا تفعل؟

B: I'm playing football. ألعب كرة قدم.



How to form a sentence: كيفية تكوين جملة:

Parts of speech
أجزاء الكلام

1 Noun الاسم

اسم شخص، حيوان، مكان أو شيء.

e.g. Ali speaks English.

e.g. The cat is under the chair.

2 Verb الفعل

يعبر عن الحدث أو الحالة.

e.g. They eat salad.

e.g. He is calm and polite.

3 Adjective الصفة

تصف الاسم.

e.g. Habiba is clever.

e.g. He has a cute pet.

4 Adverb الحال

يصف الفعل.

e.g. Mona walks quickly.

e.g. It snows heavily in winter.



Sentence formation تكوين الجملة

Subject + Verb + Object

e.g.

I eat healthy food.



The children draw pictures.



Heba is making a cake.



We played tennis after school.



Wh- questions ادوات الاستفهام

What ...? ما / ماذا (للسؤال عن ماهية الشيء)



A: What is this?
B: This is my bike.



Where ...? أين (للسؤال عن المكان)



A: Where is the cat?
B: It is on the couch.

When ...? متى (للسؤال عن الوقت)



A: When do you eat breakfast?
B: I eat breakfast at seven o'clock am.

Who ...? من (للسؤال عن العاقل)



A: Who is he?
B: He is my grandfather.

Whose ...? لمن (للسؤال عن الملكية)



A: Whose book is this?
B: This is my book. / This book is mine.

Which ...? أى (للتخير)



A: Which toy do you want?
B: I want the yellow car.



How ...? كيف



A: How do you go to school?
B: I go to school by bus.

How many ...? (للسؤال عن العدد) كم العدد



A: How many hats are there?
B: There are six hats.

How old ...? (للسؤال عن العمر) كم العمر



A: How old is he?
B: He's seven years old.

How much ...? (للسؤال عن الثمن / الكمية) كم الثمن / الكمية



A: How much is the watch?
B: It's fifty pounds.

How long ...? كم طول المدة



A: How long do you study English?
B: We study English for two hours every day.

Why ...? (للسؤال عن السبب) لماذا



A: Why can't you play football?
B: I can't play football because I hurt my leg.

Punctuation Marks علامات الترقيم



Capital letters
الحروف الكبيرة

فى بداية الجملة (الخبرية/ الأمرية)/ السؤال / أيام الأسبوع / الشهور / الضمير (I) فى أى مكان بالجملة / اللغات / الجنسيات / أسماء الأشخاص / البلدان / الأماكن الشهيرة.

e.g.
1. Hana is from England.
2. I live in Cairo, Egypt.
3. Lara studies Chinese on Mondays.
4. He went to Alexandria in August.



Period (Full stop)
النقطة

فى نهاية الجملة.

e.g. I don't go to school on Fridays.



Question mark
علامة الاستفهام

فى نهاية السؤال.

e.g. When are they coming?



Exclamation mark
علامة التعجب

نضع علامة التعجب (!) فى نهاية العبارات أو الجمل التى تعبر عن الترحيب أو التعجب أو الشعور القوى.

e.g. Hi! / Wow! / I feel excited!



Apostrophe
الفاصلة العليا

e.g.
1. Noura's dad is a doctor. توضع قبل «s» الملكية.
2. He's a tennis player. توضع فى الاختصارات.



Comma
الفاصلة السفلى

نستخدم الفاصلة عندما نكتب قائمة بالأشياء أو العبارات.

e.g.
1. I'm good at drawing, painting, and singing.
2. No, she didn't. تستخدم بعد Yes / No فى الإجابات.
3. He likes reading, but he doesn't like writing. تستخدم قبل but.

تستخدم قبل الأسماء /please إذا جاءت فى نهاية الجملة.

4. Would you like some juice, Ola?
5. Can you open the window, please?

How to Answer comprehension questions



Read the text and answer the questions:

My name is Hany. I like traveling to new places. Last week, I traveled to America with my family. It is a very big country. We traveled by plane because I like traveling by planes. We stayed in a big hotel. Our room was on the 18th floor. In America, you can see a lot of interesting things. There are lots of high-rise buildings. There are also many parks, gardens, and trees to sit under and relax.

A Choose the correct word from a, b, c, or d:

1 The main idea of the text is about ....

a) Hany's job b) Hany's favorite sport
c) Hany's trip to America d) Hany's hobby

- للإجابة على سؤال الـ "Main idea" عليك قراءة الفقرة كلها مرتين ثم قراءة الاختيارات جيدًا وغالبًا ما تكون الفكرة العامة للفقرة مذكورة فى أول سطر من الفقرة.

2 The underlined pronoun "It" refers to ....

a) Hany's family b) America
c) Egypt d) plane

- للإجابة على سؤال الـ "reference" عليك قراءة الفقرة مرتين أولًا. ثم قراءة الجملتين السابقين للضمير المحدد. وتحديد ما إذا كان هذا الضمير يشير إلى عاقل أم غير عاقل. ثم قراءة الاختيارات جيدًا لتجد الإجابة.

B Answer the following questions:

3 Why did Hany travel by plane?

Hany traveled by plane because he likes traveling by planes.

- للإجابة على سؤال الـ "Wh- Question" عليك أولًا تحديد الـ "Question word" وعن ماذا تسأل ، هنا مثلًا "Why" تستخدم للسؤال عن السبب. ثم قم بقراءة باقى السؤال وقم بتحديد تلك الجملة فى الفقرة. بعد قراءة الفقره كاملة. قم بقراءة الجملتين السابقين والتالين للجملة المحددة ستجد إجابتك.

4 Summarize the text in two sentences.

Last week, Hany traveled to America by plane. America is a big country and there are lots of things you can see there.

- للإجابة على سؤال الـ "Summarize" عليك أولًا قراءة الفقرة مرتين. ثم قم بتحديد أهم النقاط التى تتحدث عنها الفقرة. - عليك التركيز على النقاط الهامة فى الفقرة مثل "الشخصيات - وما قاموا بفعله - الأماكن - الفاعل الأساسى الذى تتحدث عنه الفقرة.
- يمكنك إعادة صياغة بعض الجمل لتقوم بدمج أكثر من حدث معًا فى جملة واحدة ولكن قم بمراعاة الضمائر- الزمن المستخدم يكون مثل الزمن المستخدم فى الفقرة.

1 Read the text and answer the questions:

The zoo is the best place to visit at the weekend. It is a safe place where many kinds of animals and birds live. The people who work there take care of the animals and birds; they give them food and drink. One visit to the zoo makes you love wildlife. Children love going to the zoo because it is a place to play and have fun. It is also a place where you can see some kinds of animals that you can't see at any other place.

A Choose the correct word from a, b, c, or d:

1 The main idea of the text is about ....

a) weekend b) the zoo c) animals d) birds

2 Many kinds of .... live in the zoo.

a) people b) animals c) children d) tourists

B Answer the following questions:

3 What is the best place to visit at the weekend?

....

4 Why do children love the zoo?

....

2 Read the text and answer the questions:

I love celebrating Sham El-Nessim with my family. The festival is for the start of spring, and it's a very old celebration. The ancient Egyptians celebrated it too. Sham El-Nessim is always on the same day as Coptic Easter Monday. In Sham El-Nessim, the weather is usually nice, so we go to the park and eat lots of nice food. We also paint and decorate eggs to make them look beautiful. We always have fun at Sham El-Nessim.

A Choose the correct word from a, b, c, or d:

1 The main idea of the text is about ....

a) celebrating Eid b) the Month of Ramadan

c) celebrating Christmas d) celebrating Sham El-Nessim

2 The underlined word "start" means the ....

a) last b) beginning c) final d) end

B Answer the following questions:

3 How is the weather in Sham El-Nessim?

....

4 What do we do on Sham El-Nessim?

....

Writing Tips

Leave a small space before the first sentence.

اترك مسافة صغيرة قبل أول جملة.

Write 50–60 words on the given topic.

اكتب ٥٠-٦٠ كلمه عن الموضوع المُعطى.

Write one idea for each sentence.

اكتب فكرة واحدة لكل جملة.

Make your sentences simple and short.

اجعل جملك بسيطة وقصيرة.

Start each sentence with a capital letter and end it with a full stop.

ابدأ كل جملة بحرف كبير (capital letter) وضع نقطة في نهايتها.

Use the appropriate tense according to the topic.

استخدم الزمن المناسب طبقًا للموضوع.

Use vocabulary that is related to the topic.

استخدم مفردات ذات صلة بالموضوع.

Re-read your paragraph to check for grammar, spelling and punctuation.

أعد قراءة فقرتك وتأكد من صحة القواعد وعدم وجود أخطاء إملائية، ومن استخدام علامات الترقيم الصحيحة.

Make sure your handwriting is neat and clear.

تأكد من أن كتابتك مرتبة وواضحة.

Write a paragraph of about 50–60 words using the following guiding elements:

"My new apartment"

more modern – bigger television

I moved into a new apartment with my family. The new kitchen is bigger and the oven is more modern. There is more space in the living room, so we can have a bigger television. We have three bedrooms now. There are two bathrooms and a fantastic balcony.

It's your turn



Write a paragraph of about 50–60 words using the following guiding elements:

"Alexandria"

- Why do you love Alexandria?
- What can you do there?

How to write an email كيف تكتب بريدًا الكترونيا

From : البريد الإلكترونى الخاص بالمرسل

To : البريد الإلكترونى الخاص بالمرسل إليه

Subject : عنوان الموضوع

Dear ...., اسم المرسل إليه

Greeting جملة افتتاحيـــة

- I'm happy to write this email to you. أنا سعيد أن أكتب لك هذا البريد الإلكترونى.
- How are you and your family? كيف حالك انت والعائلة؟
- I miss you very much. أفتقدك كثيـراً.

Body الموضـــوع

....

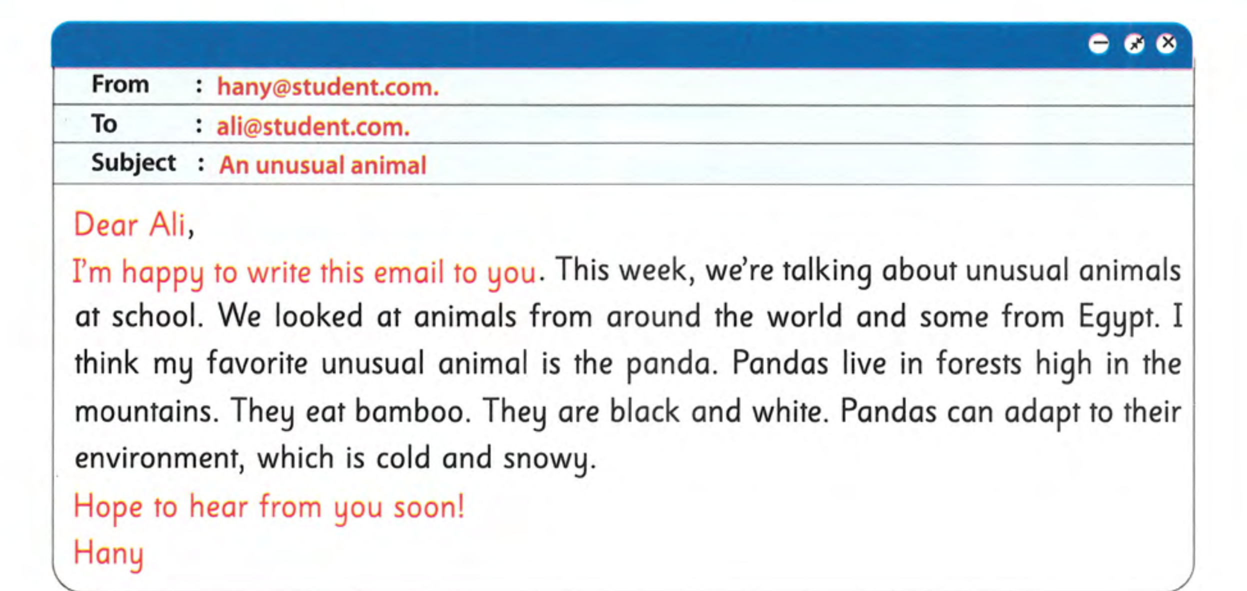
....

Conclusion جملـة ختاميـــة

- With my best wishes. مع أطيب الإمنيات.
- See you soon. أراك قريبـًا.
- Write to me soon. اكتـب لى قريبـًا.
- Hope to hear from you soon! اتمنى ان اسمع منك قريبا!

التوقيـــع
(اسم الراسل)

Write an email of about 50-60 words to your friend in Egypt telling him about your favorite animal.



From : hany@student.com.

To : ali@student.com.

Subject : An unusual animal

Dear Ali,

I'm happy to write this email to you. This week, we're talking about unusual animals at school. We looked at animals from around the world and some from Egypt. I think my favorite unusual animal is the panda. Pandas live in forests high in the mountains. They eat bamboo. They are black and white. Pandas can adapt to their environment, which is cold and snowy.

Hope to hear from you soon!

Hany

How to write a blog كيف تكتب مدونة

Write a blog post of about 50-60 words using the following guiding elements:

"Ancient Egyptian homes"

reed mats – storing crops

اسم كاتب المدونة

تاريخ كتابة المدونة

موضوع المدونة

Dalida | BLOG HOME | ABOUT ME | LINKS | ARCHIVE

Wednesday, 8th November

Ancient Egyptian homes

The furniture in Ancient Egyptian homes was very different from today. There were reed mats to sit and sleep on. Ancient Egyptians used papyrus to cover the windows and doors. In every home, there were large pots and baskets for storing crops and wooden boxes for clothes.

What do you think of it? Do you like it?

خاتمة المدونة

It's your turn

Write a blog post of about 50-60 words using the following guiding elements:

"Unusual homes"

- Where is it?
- Why is it unusual?

.... | BLOG HOME | ABOUT ME | LINKS | ARCHIVE

....

....

....

....

....

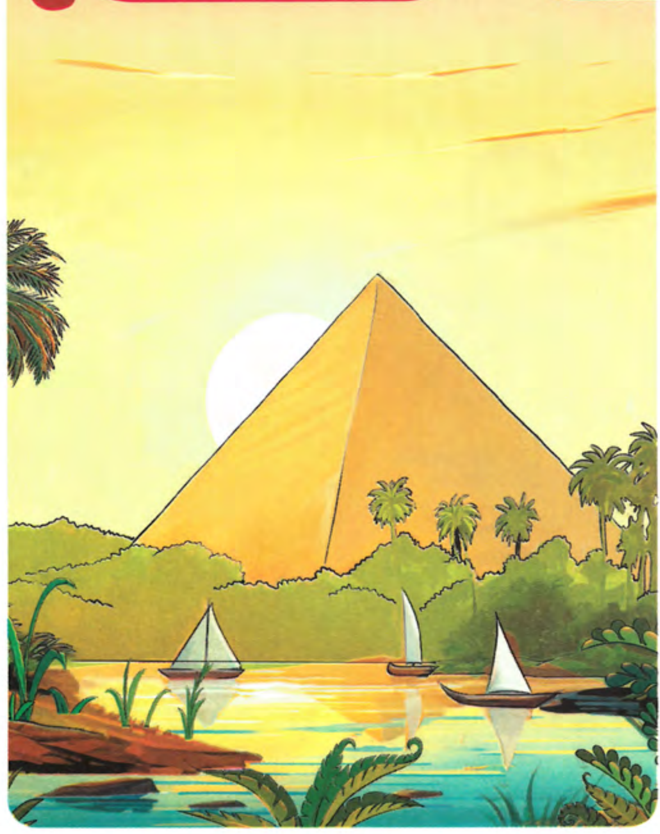
....



I discover myself

أنا أكتشف نفسي









Unit 1 Green cities

مدن خضراء

Unit Overview

Student's Book Exercises | Practice More | Answers 100% Q&A

- By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:

بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون التلميذ قادرًا على أن:

- listen, read, write, and research about green spaces in towns.
- talk about how often he/she does things.
- listen and read about a project to make a city greener.
- say the sounds "th" and "s".
- write an informal email about things he/she misses about Egypt.
- research and make an infographic about his/her area.

- يستمع، ويقرأ ويكتب ويبحث عن المساحات الخضراء فى المدن.
- يتحدث عن عدد المرات التى يقوم/تقوم فيها بالأشياء.
- يستمع ويقرأ عن مشروع لجعل المدينة أكثر خضرة.
- يقول الأصوات "th" و "s".
- يكتب بريدًا إلكترونيًا غير رسمى عن الأشياء التى يفتقدها/تفتقدها فى مصر.
- يبحث ويقوم بعمل مخطط حول منطقته/منطقتها.

Did you know?

- *"Urban greening" is an important part of town planning in many countries. It means creating areas of plants and trees in cities. These can be small parks between buildings or gardens on people's roofs.

I can find it out!

- Al-Azhar Park is a *public park located in Historic Cairo, Egypt. This park is *listed as one of the world's sixty great public spaces by the Project for Public Spaces.

* Urban greening	تخضير المناطق الحضارية	* public	عام	* listed as	مدرجة ضمن



Lesson 1



We work in the community garden
نحن نعمل فى الحديقة المجتمعية



Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:

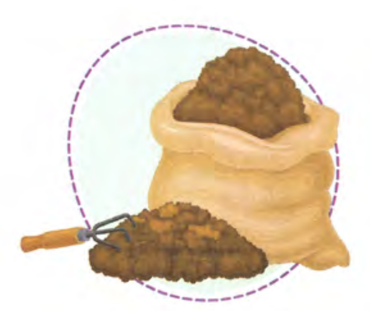
Main vocabulary



apartment block
مبنى سكنى



roof
سطح



natural fertilizer
سماد طبيعى



chemicals
مواد كيميائية

tomatoes
طماطم



peppers
فلفل



onions
بصل

lettuce
خس

lemons
ليمون



dates
بلح (تمر)



Let's say it right!

- لاحظ أن حرفى الـ (ch) فى كلمة (chemicals) و (school) ينطقان (k) (ك).
- لاحظ أن حرفى الـ (gh) فى كلمة (neighborhood) حروف صامتة (silent) لا تنطق.

Extra vocabulary

community	مجتمع	space	مساحة
volunteer	متطوع	neighborhood	حى (مكان)
market	سوق	own	خاص
fresh (adj.)	طازج	organic (adj.)	عضوى
square meter	متر مربع	a year	سنويًّا
health	صحة	summary	ملخص
local area	منطقة محلية	balcony	بلكونة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs			أفعـــال منتظمـة		
Present		Past	Present		Past
plant	يزرع	planted	use	يستخدم	used
produce	ينتج	produced	harvest	يحصد	harvested
clean	ينظف	cleaned	mention	يذكر	mentioned
Irregular verbs			**أفعال غير منتظمة**		
Present		Past	Present		Past
grow	يزرع	grew	sell	يبيع	sold
mean	يعنى / يقصد	meant	think	يعتقد	thought

Expressions and Phrases

on Fridays	فى أيام الجمعة	on Friday afternoons	فى أوقات الظهيرة يوم الجمعة
that's interesting	هذا رائع	all the times	كل الأوقات
in the middle of ...	فى منتصف ...	Wow!	رائع!
which means	مما يعنى	that's not all	ليس هذا كل شىء
make friends	يُكوِّن صداقات	sounds great	يبدو رائعًا

Check point

Choose the correct answer: **اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:**

1 When plants are ready, we (clean – produce – harvest – plant) them.
2 (Onion – Lettuce – Date – Lemon) is a green plant with a lot of leaves.
3 We live in a/an (roof – garden – apartment block – street) of eleven floors.
4 We never use (chemicals – fertilizers – plants – water) to grow our food. Our food is organic.



Listen, read, and role-play: استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:



Nour

No school tomorrow! Do you want to come to my house?

لا يوجد مدرسة غدًا! هل تريدين أن تأتى إلى منزلى؟



Mariam

Thanks Nour, but I always help my aunt on Friday afternoons at the community garden.

شكرًا يا نور، لكننى دائمًا أساعد عمتى بعد ظهر يوم الجمعة فى الحديقة المجتمعية.



Nour

The community garden? What's that?

الحديقة المجتمعية؟ ما هذا؟





Mariam

It's a big green space on the roof of my Aunt Salma's apartment block. The people who work there are all volunteers from the neighborhood. We grow vegetables to eat, and sometimes we sell them in the market, too!

إنها مساحة خضراء كبيرة على سطح عمارة عمتى سلمى. الأشخاص الذين يعملون هناك جميعهم متطوعون من الحى. نحن نزرع الخضراوات لنأكلها، وأحيانًا نبيعها فى السوق أيضًا!



Nour

That's interesting. What things do you grow?

هذا ممتع. ما الأشياء التى تزرعونها؟





Mariam

Well, we usually plant tomatoes, peppers, onions, lettuce – things people eat all the time. Sometimes we also plant fruit trees. This year we have lemons and dates.

حسنًا، عادة نزرع الطماطم والفلفل والبصل والخس - الأشياء التى يأكلها الناس طوال الوقت. فى بعض الأحيان نزرع أيضًا أشجار الفاكهة. هذا العام لدينا الليمون والتمر.



Nour

And you grow all this food in the middle of the city. Wow!

وأنتم تزرعون كل هذا الطعام فى وسط المدينة. رائع!



Mariam



Yes, it means people can grow their own fresh food and it's organic, too, which means we only use natural fertilizer – we never use chemicals.

نعم، هذا يعنى أن بإمكان الناس زراعة طعامهم الطازج وهو عضوى أيضًا، مما يعنى أننا نستخدم الأسمدة الطبيعية فقط - لا نستخدم المواد الكيميائية أبدًا.



Nour

Does your garden produce a lot of vegetables?

هل تنتج حديقتك الكثير من الخضار؟



Mariam



Yes, it does. From just one square meter of roof garden, we can harvest twenty kilos of vegetables a year. And that's not all. Roof gardens also help clean the air in the city, which is good for people's health. And they're a great place to meet people and make friends.

نعم إنها كذلك. يمكننا حصاد عشرين كيلو جرامًا من الخضار سنويًّا من مساحة متر مربع واحد فقط من الحدائق الموجودة على السطح. وهذا ليس كل شيء. تساعد حدائق الأسطح أيضًا فى تنقية الهواء فى المدينة، وهذا مفيد لصحة الناس. وهو مكان رائع للقاء الناس وتكوين صداقات.



Nour

It sounds great, Mariam. We need more community roof gardens like that in our city!

هذا يبدو رائعًا يا مريم. نحن بحاجة إلى المزيد من حدائق الأسطح المجتمعية مثل تلك الموجودة فى مدينتنا!

Vocabulary Check

- لاحظ استخدام حرف الجر (on) قبل أيام الأسبوع.

e.g. I help my mom on Friday/Friday afternoons.

- بعض الكلمات من الممكن أن تستخدم كـ noun/verb :

Noun اسم	Verb فعل
plant نبات e.g. The plants are green.	plant يزرع e.g. We usually plant tomatoes and onions.
harvest محصول e.g. We had a good harvest this year.	harvest يحصد e.g. We can harvest 20 kilos of vegetables a year.



Lesson 1



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and complete: استمع وأكمل:

1 A .... garden is a big green space on the roof of an apartment block.

2 The people who work there are all .... from the neighborhood.

3 Roof gardens also help clean the .... in the city.

2 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل العمود (أ) بالعمود (ب):

A

1 Sometimes we plant fruit trees.

2 When the food is organic, ...

3 Roof gardens help clean the air, ...

4 Roof gardens are a great...

B

a. ( ) which is good for people's health.

b. ( ) to sell our fruits.

c. ( ) This year we have lemons and dates.

d. ( ) that means we use only natural fertilizer.

e. ( ) place to meet people and make friends.

3 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Nour asks Mariam to go to her house tomorrow, but Mariam goes to help her aunt on Fridays. They work in a community garden on the roof of an apartment block. They grow vegetables and fruit for people in the local area, and sometimes they sell them, too. Mariam thinks the community garden is a good idea because the plants also help to clean the air in the city, and it is a good place to make new friends. She thinks that we need more community roof gardens in our city.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Mariam goes to help her aunt on ....

a) Saturdays b) Sundays c) Fridays d) Mondays

2 The underlined word "grow" means ....

a) harvest b) plant c) water d) clean

B Answer the following questions:

3 Where is the community garden?

....

4 Why is the community garden a good idea?

....

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملًا صحيحة:

1 Mariam – Where – Fridays – on – go – does?

....

2 the – always – I – garden – community – at – help.

....

3 come – you – to – house – my – Do – want to?

....

4 kilos of – a year – We – harvest – vegetables – can – twenty.

....

5 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

we work in the community garden

....

6 Write a paragraph of about 50-60 words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة من 50-60 كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية:

مجاب عنه آخر الكتاب

"Our community garden"

What is the community garden? – What do you grow there?

....

....

....

....

....



Lesson 2





We always work hard
نحن دائمًا نعمل بجد



Listen and say: استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

logo	شعار (علامة مميزة للدعاية)	mini (adj.)	مصغر	forest	غابة
organization	منظمة	nature	الطبيعة	effects	تأثيرات

Extra vocabulary

aid	مساعدة	urban (adj.)	حضري	location	موقع
foreign (adj.)	أجنبي	project	مشروع	naturally	طبيعيًا
carefully	بحرص	communities	مجتمعات	data	بيانات
climate	مناخ	volunteers	متطوعون	link	رابط
normally	بشكل طبيعي	information	معلومات	research	بحث
city center	وسط المدينة	gymnastics	ألعاب الجمباز	competition	مسابقة
region	منطقة				

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمـة

Present		Past	Present		Past
join	ينضم	joined	collect	يجمع	collected
click	ينقر	clicked	offer	يعرض	offered
relax	يستريح	relaxed	miss	يفوت	missed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
become	يصبح	became	understand	يفهم	understood

Expressions and Phrases

over time	مع مرور الوقت	a few times a month	عدة مرات في الشهر
go cycling	يذهب لركوب الدراجات	angry with someone	غاضب من + (شخص)

Look and read: انظر واقرأ:



Mini Forest is an organization which plants small areas of trees in the middle(1) of our cities. These special(2) green areas help people enjoy nature and help our wildlife (3) - like plants, animals and other living things.

At Mini Forest, we always work hard(4) to find the best urban locations for our forests, where people and wildlife need nature most.

We never grow foreign plants in our projects, we always plant trees that grow naturally in an area and we carefully look after them until (5) they become a small forest.

We also usually work with local(6) communities to plant and look after(7) the forests over time.

(1)	فى المنتصف
(2)	مميز
(3)	الحياة البرية
(4)	يعمل بجد
(5)	حتى
(6)	محلى
(7)	يعتنى بـ
(8)	كافٍ
(9)	يجد

We collect data from every forest we plant a few times a month. This helps us understand the effects of the new green space on the people, wildlife, and climate of the area.

We rarely have enough(8) volunteers to help us with our projects, so we are always happy when people offer to help us. Click on the link to find out(9) more.

- Mini Forest «الغابة الصغيرة» هى منظمة تزرع مساحات صغيرة من الأشجار فى وسط مدننا. تساعد هذه المناطق الخضراء المميزة الناس على الاستمتاع بالطبيعة، وتساعد حياتنا البرية مثل النباتات والحيوانات وكائنات حية أخرى.
- فى Mini Forest ، دائمًا نعمل بجد للعثور على أفضل المواقع الحضرية لغاباتنا، حيث يحتاج الناس والحياة البرية إلى الطبيعة أكثر من غيرهم.
- نحن لا نزرع نباتات أجنبية أبدًا فى مشاريعنا، نحن دائمًا نزرع الأشجار التى تنمو بشكل طبيعى فى منطقة ما ونعتنى بها بحرص حتى تصبح غابة صغيرة.
- نعمل أيضًا عادةً مع المجتمعات المحلية لزراعة الغابات والاعتناء بها بمرور الوقت.
- نجمع البيانات من كل غابة نزرعها عدة مرات فى الشهر. يساعدنا هذا فى فهم تأثيرات المساحة الخضراء الجديدة على الناس والحياة البرية ومناخ المنطقة.
- نادرًا ما يكون لدينا عدد كافٍ من المتطوعين لمساعدتنا فى مشاريعنا، لذلك نسعد دائمًا عندما يعرض الناس مساعدتنا. انقر على الرابط لمعرفة المزيد.



The Present Simple Tense زمن المضارع البسيط

We use the present simple tense to talk about habits and routines.

نستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط للتحدث عن العادات والروتين.

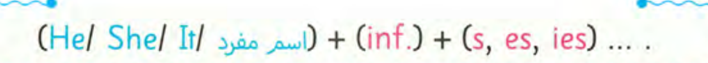
Affirmative sentence: الجملة المثبتة

(I/ We/ You/ They/ اسم جمع) + (inf.) مصدر الفعل ...



I visit my cousins every week.

أزور أبناء عمي/عمتي كل أسبوع.



(He/ She/ It/ اسم مفرد) + (inf.) + (s, es, ies) ... .



He usually goes to school by bus.

عادة ما يذهب إلى المدرسة بالحافلة.

Negative sentence: الجملة المنفية

(I/ We/ You/ They/ اسم جمع) + don't + (inf.) مصدر الفعل ... .



We don't like fish at all. We never eat it.

نحن لا نحب السمك على الإطلاق. نحن لا نأكله أبدًا.

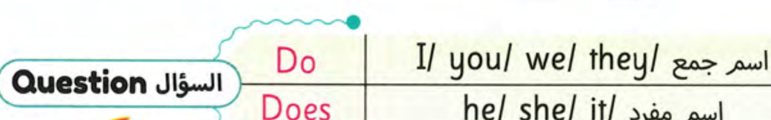
(He/ She/ It/ اسم مفرد) + doesn't + (inf.) مصدر الفعل ... .



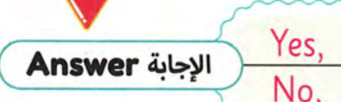
Hani rarely plays football. He doesn't like sports.

نادرًا ما يلعب هاني كرة القدم. هو لا يحب الرياضة.

Yes/No question: السؤال بـ (هل):



Question السؤال	Do	I/ you/ we/ they/ اسم جمع	+ (inf.) مصدر الفعل ... ?
	Does	he/ she/ it/ اسم مفرد	



Answer الإجابة	Yes,	subject (الفاعل)	do/ does.
	No,		don't/ doesn't.



A: Does it rain in the Western Desert?
B: No, it doesn't. It rarely rains in the Western Desert.

Wh- question: السؤال باستخدام كلمة الاستفهام:

Question word كلمة الاستفهام	do	I/ you/ we/ they/ اسم جمع	+ (inf.) مصدر الفعل ... ?
	does	he/ she/ it/ اسم مفرد	



A: What do you do at Sham El Nessim?
B: We always go to the park near my uncle's house.



* We can use these time expressions to talk about how often we do something:
يمكننا استخدام تعبيرات الوقت هذه للتحدث عن عدد المرات التى نقوم فيها بشىء ما:
every day كل يوم – once a week مرة فى الأسبوع – twice a (month) مرتين فى(الشهر) – three times a (year) ثلاث مرات فى (السنة)

Check point

Choose the correct answer: **اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:**

1 A: How often do you play football?
B: I play it (one – once – first – two) a week.

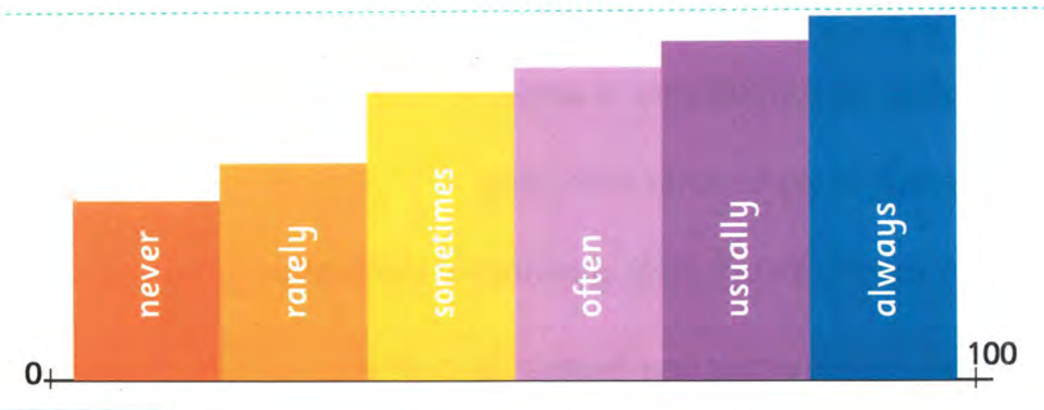
2 They (don't – doesn't – aren't – weren't) go into the city.

3 A: (Do – Does – Is – Are) Hana help at home? B: Yes, she does.

Adverbs of frequency ظروف التكرار

We use adverbs of frequency before a verb (but after the verb to be) to talk about how often an action happens.

نستخدم ظروف التكرار قبل الفعل (وبعد الفعل be) للتحدث عن عدد المرات التى يحدث فيها الفعل.



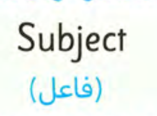
Form: التكوين





I often eat dates as a snack – I love them!

غالبًا ما آكل التمر كوجبة خفيفة - أحب ذلك!



verb to be (am/ is/ are) → adverb of frequency



The weather is usually sunny in Egypt.

الطقس مشمس عادة فى مصر.

How often: للسؤال عن عدد مرات تكرار الفعل:



How often do you work in the community garden?

كم عدد المرات التى تعمل فيها فى الحديقة المجتمعية؟

I work there a few times a month.

أعمل هناك مرات قليلة فى الشهر.





Lesson 2



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and write (True) or (False): استمع واكتب (صح) أو(خطأ):

1 Dalia plays basketball once a week. ( )

2 Dalia practices gymnastics every day. ( )

3 Twice a month, there's a big gymnastics competition in our region. ( )

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1 Hani ………………………………… to the club every week.

a) go b) goes c) went d) going

2 We …………… go cycling on holiday, but most days we relax on the beach. SB

a) always b) usually c) sometimes d) often

3 I don't ………………………………… my grandparents on Saturdays.

a) visit b) visiting c) visits d) visited

4 Amira visits her aunt two times every week. She visits her aunt …………… a week.

a) once b) twice c) three d) every

3 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل العمود (أ) بالعمود (ب):

A

1 We never grow...

2 We rarely have enough volunteers, ...

3 We work with local communities to plant ...

4 A: How often do you play football with your friends?

B

a. ( ) so we are happy when people offer to help us.

b. ( ) and look after the forests over time.

c. ( ) B: At the club.

d. ( ) B: Twice a week.

e. ( ) foreign plants in our projects.

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملًا صحيحة:

1 usually – She – to – by – goes – bus – school.

....

2 never – Donia and Wael – late – are – for school.

SB

....

3 look – the – over – We – forests – after – time.

....

4 grow – our projects – We – never – foreign – in – plants.

....

5 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

how often do you work in the community garden

....

6 Write a paragraph of about 50–60 words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة من 50–60 كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية:

مجاب عنه آخر الكتاب

"Mini Forest"

an organization – foreign plants

....

....

....

....



Lesson 3





A Reading



Listen and say: استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

neighborhood	الحى	floor	الطابق / الدور	view	منظر
species	فصائل/ أنواع	art works	أعمال فنية	theater performance	أداء مسرحى
yoga	اليوجا	news	أخبار		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs			أفعــال منتظمـة		
Present		Past	Present		Past
create	يخلق	created	pass	يمر	passed
miss	يفتقد	missed	relax	يستريح	relaxed

Expressions and Phrases

know about ...	يعرف عن ...	really cool	رائع حقًّا
walk through ...	يمشى عبر ...	go running	يذهب للجرى (يجرى)
much quieter	أكثر هدوءًا	doesn't taste like ...	لا يبدو طعمُه مثل ...
spend time	يقضى وقتًا		

Definitions

hang out	يتجول/ يتسكع	spend time with, relax together	نقضى الوقت ونسترخى معًا
local residents	السكان المحليون	people who live in a neighborhood	الناس الذين يعيشون فى الحى
pass through	يمر عبر	go from one place to another	ينتقل من مكان لآخر
miss	يفتقد	feel sad that you can't have or see something	تشعر بالحزن لأنه لا يمكنك الحصول على شىء أو رؤيته
railway line	خط السكة الحديد	a road for trains	طريق للقطارات

Vocabulary Check

- إضافة (s) الجمع إلى التاريخ (1980s) تعبر عن الفترة من (1980) إلى (1989).
- كلمة (home) قد تعنى منزلًا أو وطنًا.



Look and read:



انظر واقرأ:

Search



Hi Samer,

How are you? I'm well[1] and New York is great! Our apartment block is on the sixteenth floor, so we have a great view of the city. New York has a lot of green spaces. There are also projects to create new parks and green spaces in parts of the city that no one[2] uses now, like the famous High Line – do you know about it?

Years ago, the High Line was a railway line, but in the 1980s trains stopped using it. Some local residents then decided to make the old railway into a big, long park that everyone could use. Now it's a green space with more than 500 species of plants and trees in it! It is 2.5 kms long and when you walk through it, you can see art works, watch a theater performance, eat delicious food, or go running, or just hang out with your friends. I think it's my favorite place in New York. It passes through our neighborhood, so I often go there with my parents. Here is one of my photos of it.

How are things in Alexandria? I miss home. New York is very noisy[3] all the time. Alexandria is much quieter at night.

There are lots of different restaurants[4] here in New York, and the food doesn't taste like the food at home. I think the food tastes more delicious in Egypt. I miss our food so much!

Write soon and tell me all your news,

Wael

(1)	بصحة جيدة
(2)	لا أحد
(3)	صاخب
(4)	مطاعم

مرحبًا سامر

كيف حالك؟ أنا بصحة جيدة ونيويورك رائعة! تقع شقتنا فى الطابق السادس عشر، لذلك لدينا إطلالة رائعة على المدينة.

نيويورك بها الكثير من المساحات الخضراء. هناك أيضًا مشاريع لإنشاء حدائق ومساحات خضراء جديدة فى أجزاء من المدينة لا يستخدمها أحد الآن، مثل High Line الشهير - هل تعرفه؟

منذ سنوات، كان High Line عبارة عن خط سكة حديد، لكن فى الثمانينيات توقفت القطارات عن استخدامه. ثم قرر بعض السكان المحليين تحويل السكك الحديدية القديمة إلى حديقة كبيرة وطويلة يمكن للجميع استخدامها. الآن هى مساحة خضراء بها أكثر من ٥٠٠ نوع من النباتات والأشجار! يبلغ طوله ٢٫٥ كيلومتر، وعندما تمشى خلاله، يمكنك مشاهدة الأعمال الفنية، أو مشاهدة عرض مسرحى، أو تناول طعام لذيذ، أو الجرى، أو مجرد التسكع مع أصدقائك. أعتقد أنه مكانى المفضل فى نيويورك. إنه يمر عبر حيّنا، لذلك غالبًا ما أذهب إلى هناك مع والدى. هذه واحدة من صورى له.

كيف هى الأمور فى الإسكندرية؟ اشتقت للوطن. نيويورك صاخبة جدًا طوال الوقت. الإسكندرية أكثر هدوءًا فى الليل.

يوجد الكثير من المطاعم المختلفة هنا فى نيويورك، والطعام لا يشبه مذاق الطعام فى الوطن. أعتقد أن الطعام طعمه ألذ فى مصر. أفتقد طعامنا كثيرًا!

اكتب قريبًا وأخبرنى بكل أخبارك،

وائل

Check point

SB

1 What's Wael's favorite place in New York? ....

2 What is the High Line? ....

Tip! For True/False exercises, first read the sentences carefully. Underline the key words and look for similar words in the text. Compare the information in the sentences and in the text, then choose your answer.

بالنسبة لتمارين الصواب / الخطأ، اقرأ الجمل بعناية أولًا. ضع خطًّا تحت الكلمات الرئيسية وابحث عن الكلمات المتشابهة فى النص.

قارن المعلومات الواردة فى الجمل والنص ثم اختر إجابتك.

e.g.

Read the email again and answer T (True) or F (False). Correct the false sentences in your notebook.

اقرأ البريد الإلكترونى مرة أخرى وأجب T (صواب) أو F (خطأ). صحح الجمل الخاطئة فى دفتر ملاحظاتك.

1 Samer's family lives in a tall building. (T)

2 There aren't many parks in New York. (F)

Correction: There are many parks in New York.

3 Samer lives far from the High Line. (F)

Correction: Wael lives near the High Line.

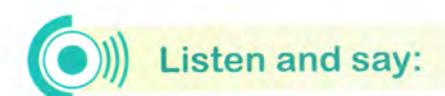
4 In the past, the High Line was a road. (F)

Correction: In the past, the High Line was a railway line.

5 The High Line is two and a half kilometers long. (T)

6 Samer loves the local food. (T)





Listen and say: استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

selfish (adj.) أنانى	giant (adj.) عملاق	local children أطفال القرية (السكان المحليون)
spring فصل الربيع	hole حفرة	tiny (adj.) صغير الحجم

Extra vocabulary

season فصل/ موسم	village قرية	soft (adj.) ناعم
colorful (adj.) ملون	bees نحل	lovely (adj.) جميل
empty (adj.) فارغ	silent (adj.) صامت	leaves أوراق الشجر
snow الثلج	sound صوت (غير بشرى)	sweet (adj.) حلو
corner زاوية	branches فروع	

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمـة

Present	Past	Present	Past
share يشارك	shared	cover يغطى	covered
laugh يضحك	laughed	climb up يتسلق	climbed up

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
build يبنى	built	fall يسقط	fell
understand يفهم	understood	wake up يستيقظ	woke up
hear يسمع	heard	sit يجلس	sat
feel يشعر	felt	stand يقف	stood

Expressions and Phrases

on their way home فى طريقهم إلى المنزل	turns brown تتحول للون البنى
fly away يطير بعيدًا	What is wrong? ما الأمر؟



THE SELFISH GIANT
العملاق الأنانى

Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

The beginning

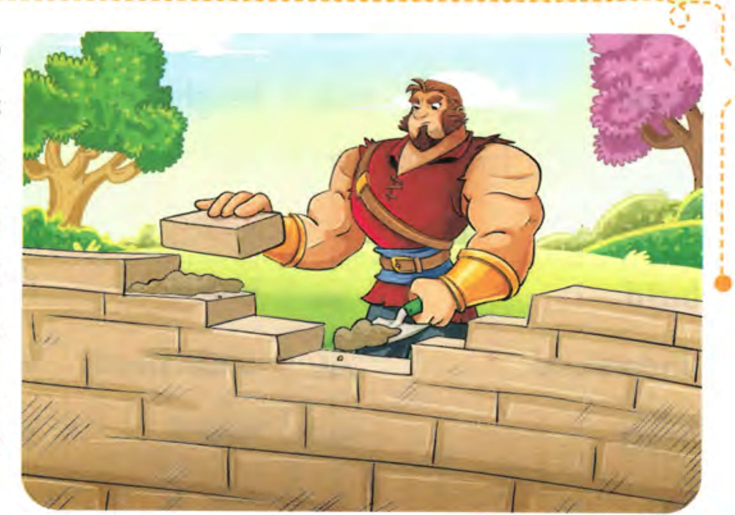


In a village, there lives a giant who has a wonderful (1) garden. In his garden there are tall trees, beautiful flowers and soft, green grass. There are colorful birds singing in the trees and bees on the plants (2). Every afternoon, on their way home from school, the local (3) children come to play in the giant's garden. The lovely garden always makes the children happy.

فى قريـة، يعيـش عمـلاق لديـه حديقـة رائعـة. فـى حديقتـه أشـجار طويلـة وأزهـار جميلـة وعشـب أخضـر ناعـم. هنـاك طيـور ملونـة تغـرد فـى الأشـجار والنحـل علـى النباتـات. بعـد ظهـر كل يـوم، فـى طريـق عودتهـم إلـى المنـزل مـن المدرسـة، يأتـى الأطفـال المحليـون للعـب فـى حديقـة العمـلاق. الحديقـة الجميلـة دائمًـا تجعـل الأطفـال سـعداء.

(1)	رائع
(2)	نباتات
(3)	محلى

The middle



But the selfish giant doesn't want to share his garden, so one day he builds a big wall around it. Now the children never come there to play. The days pass and the garden is always empty and silent. Slowly (4), the green grass turns brown. The leaves fall from the trees. Then snow covers the garden and all (5) the birds and bees fly away.

لكـن العمـلاق الأنانـى لا يريـد مشـاركة حديقتـه، لذلـك فـى أحـد الأيـام قـام ببنـاء جـدار كبيـر حولهـا. الآن الأطفـال لا يأتـون إلـى هنـاك للعـب. تمـر الأيـام والحديقـة دائمًـا فارغـة وصامتـة. ببـطء، يتحـول العشـب الأخضـر إلـى اللـون البنـى. الأوراق تسـقط مـن الأشـجار. ثـم يغطـى الثلـج الحديقـة وتطيـر جميـع الطيـور والنحـل بعيـدًا.

(4)	ببطء
(5)	جميع



Spring arrives in the village, but in the giant's garden it is still winter. Everything is under the snow. The giant doesn't understand. Usually his garden is beautiful [6] in spring! What is wrong? Then one morning he wakes up and hears a lovely sound. A little blue bird is singing in a tree outside. Then the giant hears another sweet sound - children laughing.

يصل الربيع إلى القرية، لكن لا يزال الشتاء فى حديقة العملاق. يغطى الثلج كل شىء. العملاق لا يستوعب ماذا حدث؟ فعادة ما تكون حديقته جميلة فى الربيع. ما الخطأ؟ ثم فى صباح أحد الأيام استيقظ وسمع صوتًا جميلًا. طائر أزرق صغير يغنى فى شجرة بالخارج. ثم يسمع العملاق صوتًا لطيفًا آخر - أطفال يضحكون.

(6) جميل

The end



He looks out of the window and sees that the children have come back [7] through a hole in the garden wall. Now they are sitting in the trees. The leaves on the trees are green again and flowers are opening around them. The giant feels so happy to see his garden grow again.

But in one corner of the garden, it is still winter. The giant sees a tiny boy standing there. He is too small to climb up into the tree. Suddenly [8] the giant understands everything. "Now I know why the spring didn't come," he says, I think it's because I was selfish about my garden." He goes out and helps the little boy climb up into the tree. Suddenly, all the leaves on the tree open and the birds fly up into its branches and start to sing. "When you're not selfish," the giant says, "good things happen."

(7) يعود

(8) فجأة

ينظر من النافذة ويرى أن الأطفال قد عادوا من خلال ثقب فى جدار الحديقة. الآن هم جالسون بين الأشجار. عادت الأوراق على الأشجار خضراء مرة أخرى وتفتحت الأزهار من حولها. يشعر العملاق بسعادة غامرة لرؤية حديقته تنمو مرة أخرى.

لكن فى أحد أركان الحديقة، لا يزال الشتاء. يرى العملاق صبيًّا صغيرًا يقف هناك. إنه أصغر من أن يصعد إلى الشجرة. فجأة يدرك العملاق كل شىء. يقول: «أنا أعرف لماذا لم يأت الربيع، لأننى كنت أنانيًّا فيما يخص حديقتى». يخرج ويساعد الطفل الصغير على الصعود إلى الشجرة. فجأة، تزهر كل الأوراق على الشجرة وتطير الطيور إلى أغصانها وتبدأ فى الغناء.

يقول العملاق: «عندما لا تكون أنانيًّا، تحدث الأشياء الجيدة».

Check point

1 Where does the giant live? ....

2 How is the giant different at the end of the story?



....

Pronunciation

Listen and say: استمع وقل:

/s/

sick	مريض
so	لذلك
pass (v.)	يمر / ينجح
mouse	فأر
sing (v.)	يغني
seed	بذرة
stalk	ساق النبات
bus	أتوبيس
six	ستة
sunset	وقت الغروب
sky	سماء
sunny	مشمس

/θ/

thumb	إبهام
think (v.)	يفكر
thick	كثيف
throw (v.)	يلقى/ يرمى
path	طريق
mouth	فم
thing	شيء
thanks	شكرًا
thirsty	عطشان
bath	حمام
thin	نحيف
thunder	رعد
threat	تهديد



Lesson 3



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and write (True) or (False): استمع واكتب (صح) أو(خطأ):

1 The giant has a small garden. ( )

2 The giant builds a wall around his garden. ( )

3 When you're selfish, good things happen. ( )

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1 We live in an apartment block on the tenth ....

a) flower b) flour c) floor d) flood

2 The .... giant doesn't want to share his garden.

a) sad b) selfish c) happy d) kind

3 ".........................." means to spend time and relax together.

a) Pass through b) Hang out c) Miss d) Create

4 ".........................." are the people who live in a neighborhood.

a) Foreigners b) Egyptians c) Children d) Local residents

3 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل العمود (أ) بالعمود (ب):

A

1 New York is very noisy.

2 "Pass through" means ...

3 A "railway line" is ...

4 The lovely garden ...

B

a. ( ) a road for cars.

b. ( ) always makes the children happy.

c. ( ) Alexandria is much quieter at night.

d. ( ) a road for trains.

e. ( ) to go from one place to another.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

New York has a lot of green spaces, like the famous High Line. The High Line was a railway line, but in the 1980s, trains stopped using it. Some local residents decided to make the old railway into a big, long park that everyone could use. Now it's a green space with more than 500 species of plants and trees in it! It is 2.5 kms long, and when you walk through it, you can see art works, watch a theater performance, eat delicious food, or go running, or just hang out with your friends.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 New York has a lot of green ...., like the famous High Line.

a) hospitals b) building c) spaces d) schools

2 The underlined pronoun "it" refers to the ....

a) green space b) idea c) yoga d) High Line

B Answer the following questions:

3 How long is the park?

....

4 What can you do in the park?

....

5 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

How are things in alexandria

....

6 Write a paragraph of about 50-60 words using the following guiding elements:
اكتب فقرة من 50-60 كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية:

مجاب عنه آخر الكتاب

"The High Line"

What and where is it? – How important is it?

....

....

....

....

....



Lessons 4 & 5
Writing





Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

Donia's email to her friend Laila in Luxor

From:	donia@qwikmail.com
To:	laila@egyptmail.com
Subject:	My new life in Scotland (1)



The Meadows

«حدائق» المروج



Edinburgh Castle

قلعة أدنبرة



porridge

عصيدة (أكلة شعبية فى أسكتلندا)

Hi Laila,

How are things with you?

I'm finally(2) in Scotland with Mom, Dad, and Hani. It's really interesting!

Our apartment is in the city center(3), just next to a really cool park called The Meadows. It's on the third floor(4) and the park is on the other side(5) of the street, so we have a great view(6) over the trees. People use the park a lot for sports and meeting friends, so there's always something to see there. In the distance(7), we can see the famous Edinburgh Castle(8), too!

(1)	أسكتلندا
(2)	أخيرًا
(3)	وسط المدينة
(4)	الدور الثالث
(5)	على الجانب الآخر
(6)	منظر
(7)	من بعيد
(8)	قلعة أدنبرة

مرحبًا ليلى

كيف هى الأمور معك؟

أنا أخيرًا فى أسكتلندا مع أمى وأبى وهانى. إنها مثيرة للاهتمام حقًّا!

تقع شقتنا فى وسط المدينة، بجوار حديقة رائعة بالفعل تسمى «The Meadows». إنها فى الطابق الثالث وتقع الحديقة على الجانب الآخر من الشارع، لذلك لدينا إطلالة رائعة على الأشجار. يستخدم الناس المتنزه كثيرًا لممارسة الرياضة ومقابلة الأصدقاء، لذلك هناك دائمًا ما يمكن رؤيته يمكننا أن نرى من مسافة بعيدة قلعة أدنبرة الشهيرة أيضًا!

I like Scotland, but there are lots of things I miss about Egypt – the warm, sunny weather (it's never hot here) and especially[9] the food! Scottish[10] food is OK but Egyptian food is better! For example, for breakfast a lot of Scottish people eat porridge[11]. They usually make it with milk, and they sometimes put honey[12] on it, but I don't really like it! I really miss my favorite Egyptian breakfast, *ful medames*!

(9)	خصوصًا
(10)	أسكتلندى
(11)	عصيدة
(12)	عسل

The people here are nice and I have a lot of new friends at school. I often go to my friend Rhona's house after school. We study together and sometimes we watch TV – in English!

Please write back soon and tell me all the news from home.

Lots of love,

Donia

أحب أسكتلندا، لكن هناك الكثير من الأشياء التى أفتقدها فى مصر - الطقس الدافئ المشمس (ليس الجو حارًا هنا أبدًا) وخاصة الطعام! الطعام الأسكتلندى جيد لكن الطعام المصرى أفضل! على سبيل المثال، لتناول الإفطار، يأكل الكثير من الأسكتلنديين العصيدة. عادة ما يصنعونها بالحليب، ويضعون عليها أحيانًا العسل، لكن أنا فعلًا لا أحبها. أفتقد حقًا إفطارى المصرى المفضل، فول مدمس!

الناس هنا لطيفون ولدى الكثير من الأصدقاء الجدد فى المدرسة. غالبًا ما أذهب إلى منزل صديقتى رونا بعد المدرسة ونذاكر معًا وأحيانًا نشاهد التلفزيون - باللغة الإنجليزية!

اكتبى لى أيضًا من فضلك وحدثينى عن الجديد فى الوطن.

الكثير من الحب،

دنيا

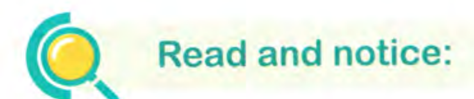
Check point

1 Where did Donia travel?

....

2 What did Donia miss about Egypt?

....



Read and notice: اقرأ ولاحظ :

How to write an informal email كيف تكتب بريدًا إلكترونيًّا غير رسمى

An informal email is a message you write to friends or family. An informal email should be friendly in tone, use informal language, and include opening and closing phrases.

البريد الإلكترونى غير الرسمى هو رسالة تكتبها إلى الأصدقاء أو العائلة. يجب أن يكون البريد الإلكترونى غير الرسمى ودودًا فى أسلوبه، ويستخدم لغة غير رسمية، ويتضمن عبارات افتتاحية وختامية.

From : عنوان البريد الإلكترونى الخاص بالمرسل

To : عنوان البريد الإلكترونى الخاص بالمرسل إليه

Subject : عنوان الموضوع

Opening phrase عبارة افتتاحية → • Hi Laila

A question to reader سؤال للقارئ → • How are things with you?

Informal expressions تعبيرات غير رسمية → • a really cool park, 😄 • it tastes pretty yucky 🙁

A request to reader طلب من القارئ → • Please write back soon.

Closing phrase عبارة ختامية → • Lots of love



Lessons 4 & 5



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and complete: استمع وأكمل:

1 I miss the warm, sunny .... of Egypt.

2 For breakfast a lot of Scottish people eat ....

3 They usually make it with milk, and they sometimes put .... on it.

2 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل العمود (أ) بالعمود (ب):

A

1 The park is on the other side of the street, ...

2 Scottish food is OK, but ...

3 For breakfast, ...

4 I'm finally in Scotland.

B

a. ( ) Egyptian food is better.

b. ( ) so we have a great view over the trees.

c. ( ) a lot of Scottish people eat porridge.

d. ( ) It's really interesting.

e. ( ) a lot of Scottish people eat ful medames.

3 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

My name is Hana. I'm finally in Scotland. Our apartment is on the third floor and the park is on the other side of the street, so we have a great view over the trees. People use the park a lot for sports and making friends, so there's always something to see there. Scottish food is OK, but Egyptian food is better! For example, for breakfast a lot of Scottish people eat porridge. They usually make it with milk, and they sometimes put honey on it, but I don't really like it!

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 A lot of Scottish people eat ....

a) ful medames b) porridge c) milk d) honey

2 Egyptian food is .... than the Scottish food.

a) worse b) smaller c) better d) farther

B Answer the following questions:

3 Where is Hana?

....

4 What do people do at the park?

....

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملًا صحيحة:

1 things – you – How – with – are?

....

2 eat – breakfast – Scottish – for – porridge – people.

....

3 have – friends – school – a lot of – I – new – at.

....

4 is – Our – the – center – in – apartment – city.

....

5 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

I'm finally in scotland

....

6 Write an informal email of about 50-60 words to your friend in Egypt telling them about your new life:

اكتب بريدًا إلكترونيًا غير رسمى يتكون من 50-60 كلمة إلى صديقك فى مصر لإخباره عن حياتك الجديدة:

مجاب عنه آخر الكتاب

From : ....

To : ....

Subject : ....

....

....

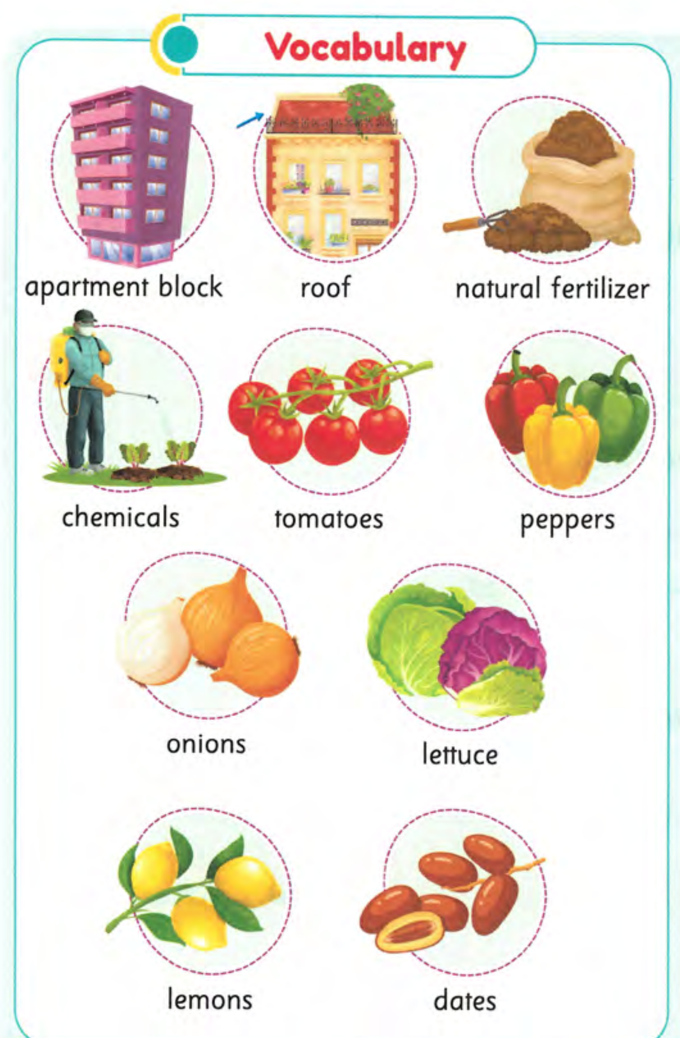
....

....

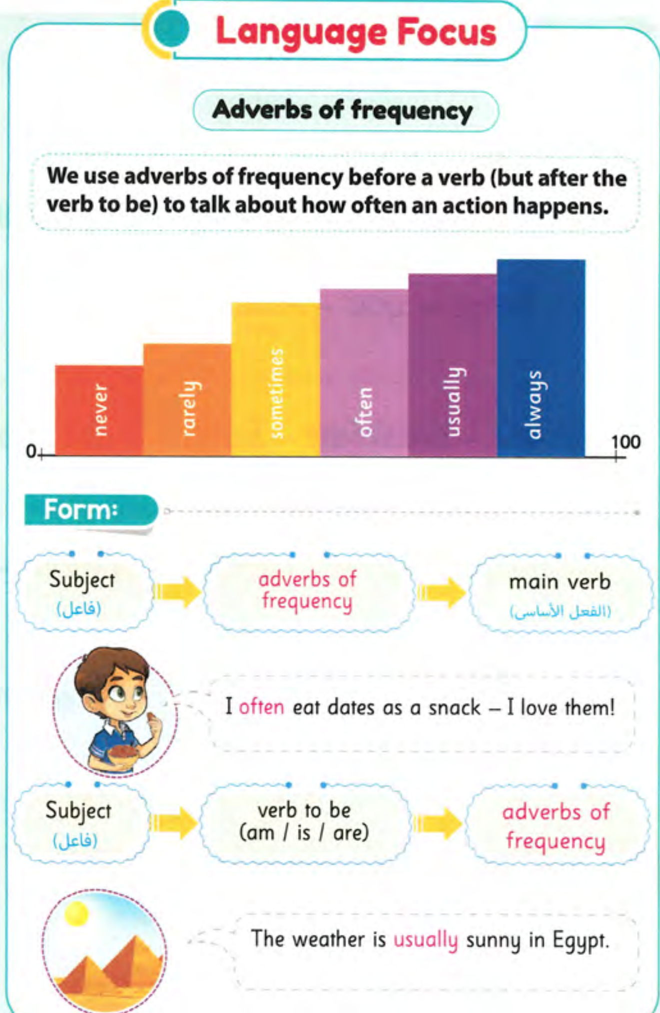
Unit 1 REVIEW



Vocabulary



Language Focus



Pronunciation

/s/

sick	stalk
so	bus
pass	six
mouse	sunset
sing	sky
seed	sunny

/θ/

thumb	thanks
think	thirsty
thick	bath
throw	thin
path	thunder
mouth	threat
thing	



Unit 1 CHECK YOUR VOCABULARY



Lesson 1

يزرع	....	مبنى سكنى	....
سطح	....	سماد طبيعى	....
مواد كيميائية	....	يحصد	....
طماطم	....	فلفل	....
بصل	....	خس	....
ليمون	....	بلح (تمر)	....

Lesson 2

شعار	....	مصغر	....
غابة	....	منظمة	....
الطبيعة	....	تأثيرات	....
موقع	....	بيانات	....
حضرى	....	أجنبى	....
متطوعون	....	بحث	....
مجتمعات	....	مناخ	....

Lesson 3

الحى	....	الطابق / الدور	....
منظر	....	فصائل / أنواع	....
مسرح	....	أداء	....
أنانى	....	عملاق	....
إبهام	....	كثيف	....
يرمى	....	يمر	....
ممر	....	بذرة	....
ساق النبات	....	حمام	....
وقت الغروب	....	تهديد	....



تأكد من حفظك لكلمات الدروس قبل البدء فى إجابة اختبار الوحدة.

WRITING TIME



How to write about "Mini Forest":

- Mini Forest is (تعريف المنظمة).
- Mini Forest helps (فوائد المنظمة).
- We plant (نوع النباتات التى يتم زراعتها).
- We need (احتياجات المنظمة).

Mini Forest is an organization which plants small areas of trees in the middle of our cities. Mini Forest helps people enjoy nature and help our wildlife. We always plant trees that grow naturally in an area and we carefully look after them until they become a small forest. We need more volunteers to join the Mini Forest movement!

How to write an informal email:

- Start with an opening phrase.
- Ask about the reader's health/news.
- Use informal expressions.
- End with a friendly closing phrase.

From : nadia@gmail.com
To : nahla@gmail.com
Subject : my visit to Paris

Hello Nahla,
How are things in Alexandria?
I'm spending a great time in Paris. I got a family ticket to Disneyland. I'm super excited. I went to the Louver museum, but guess what! It was pretty boring. People here are nice and the food is yummy, too.
Write to me soon to tell me your news.
Lots of love.
Nadia.

How to write about a project to create green spaces:

- (اسم المشروع) is in (اسم البلد) ....
- Years ago, (اسم المشروع) was (تاريخ المشروع) ....
- Now it's (تحويل المكان) ....
- It is (طول المشروع) long ....
- When you walk through it, you can (أنشطة داخل المشروع) ....

The High Line is in New York. Years ago, the High Line was a railway line, but in the 1980s trains stopped using it. Now it's a green space with more than 500 species of plants and trees in it! It is 2.5 kms long. When you walk through it, you can see art works, watch a theater performance, or just hang out with your friends.

لكى تتمكن من كتابة الموضوعات بشكل مميز، اتبع هذه الخطوات.

Unit 1 STUDENT'S BOOK CORNER

1 Look and write:

apartment block – chemicals – harvest – natural fertilizer – plant – roof

1  

....

2 

....

3 

....

4 

....

5 

....

6 

....

2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 10 pm – usually – in bed – before – I'm.

....

2 always – My dad – a big breakfast – in the morning – eats.

....

3 the dentist – you – go – How – do – often – to?

....

4 rains – It – the Western Desert – rarely – in.

....

3 Circle the correct adverb in each sentence:

1 We don't like fish at all. We (often – never) eat it.
2 Date palm trees (usually – never) produce fruit.
3 My aunt lives with us, so I (often – rarely) speak to her.
4 I (sometimes – never) do my homework in the afternoon, but I prefer to do it in the evening.
5 Hani (rarely – often) plays football. He doesn't like sports.



أسئلة إضافية مؤلفة للتدريب طبقًا لما ورد بكتاب الوزارة

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

أكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

sometimes – always – doesn't – have

My name is Sama. I .... wake up at 7 o'clock as I always have my breakfast at seven thirty. I sometimes .... lunch at work. I never watch TV in the afternoon. I always read books in the evening. I .... have dinner at 7 o'clock. I always sleep at 10 o'clock.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1 A: .... do you play tennis? B: Twice a week.

a) How much b) How many c) How often d) How old

2 We .... water the plants in the morning.

a) always b) do c) isn't d) doesn't

3 I .... watch TV before I sleep. It's unhealthy.

a) sometimes b) usually c) often d) never

4 I never .... unhealthy foods.

a) eats b) eating c) eat d) ate

3 Correct the underlined words:

صحح الكلمة التى تحتها خط:

1 I <u>always</u> play basketball. I'm bad at it. (............................)

2 A: How <u>many</u> do you make lunch? B: Twice a week. (............................)

3 Yara <u>never</u> travels to Cairo. She travels once a month. (............................)

4 It's <u>rarely</u> sunny and hot in the summer. (............................)





Listening

1 Listen and write (True) or (False): استمع واكتب (صح) أو(خطأ):

1 The High Line is in Cairo. ( )
2 The High Line was a railway line. ( )
3 It is 2.9 kms long. ( )

2 Listen and complete: استمع وأكمل:

1 Mariam always helps her aunt at the .... garden.
2 It's a big green space on the .... of my Aunt Salma's apartment block.
3 The people who work there are all .... from the neighborhood.

Reading

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1 The .... giant doesn't want to share his garden.
a) happy b) kind c) selfish d) helpful
2 We don't use .... when we grow organic food.
a) fertilizers b) chemicals c) seeds d) water
3 We .... go cycling on holiday, but most days we relax on the beach.
a) sometimes b) always c) never d) rarely
4 A: .... do you work in your garden? B: Twice a week.
a) Where b) Why c) How long d) How often

4 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل العمود (أ) بالعمود (ب):

A	B
1 "Railway line" means ...	a. ( ) for sports and making friends.
2 From one square meter of roof garden, ...	b. ( ) we can harvest twenty kilos of vegetables a year.
3 Mini Forest works with the local communities ...	c. ( ) to plant and look after the forests over time.
4 People use the park ...	d. ( ) a road for trains
	e. ( ) to want something you can't have.

5 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Mini Forest is an organization which plants small areas of trees in the middle of our cities. These special green areas help people enjoy nature and help our wildlife.
At Mini Forest, we always work hard to find the best urban locations for our forests, where people and wildlife need nature most. We never grow foreign plants in our

projects, we always plant trees that grow naturally in an area and we carefully look after them until they become a small forest. We rarely have enough volunteers to help us with our projects, so we are always happy when people offer to help us.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The underlined pronoun "them" refers to ....
a) small forests b) organizations c) trees d) wildlife

2 We need more .... to join the Mini Forest movement!
a) students b) volunteers c) foreigners d) players

B Answer the following questions:

3 What is Mini Forest? ....

4 Summarize the benefits of the organization for people and nature.
....

Writing

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة:

1 does – How – eat – she – often – dates?
....

2 want to – Do – house – my – come to – you?
....

3 is – Egypt – The – in – sunny – weather – usually.
....

4 We – work – communities – usually – local – with.
....

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

Where does Mariam go on fridays
....

8 Write a paragraph of about 50–60 words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة من 50-60 كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية:

مجاب عنه آخر الكتاب

"Daily routine"

I always – I never

....
....
....
....



< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practice more	Solve more exams	Well done!

Unit 2

We are all different

جميعنا مختلفون



Unit Overview

Student's Book Exercises | Practice More | Answers 100% Q&A

• By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:

• بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون التلميذ قادرًا على أن:

- listen, read, and write about people's personalities.
  - يستمع، يقرأ ويكتب عن شخصيات الناس.
- make clear what people, places, and things he/she's talking about using who, which, and where.
  - توضيح الأشخاص والأماكن والأشياء التي يتحدث/تتحدث عنها باستخدام «who»، «which» و «where».
- describe his/her own and other people's feelings.
  - يصف مشاعره/مشاعرها الخاصة ومشاعر الناس.
- say the sounds /ʌ/ and /æ/.
  - يقول الأصوات /ʌ/ و /æ/.
- write an essay explaining the positive and negative qualities of something.
  - يكتب مقالًا يشرح الصفات الإيجابية والسلبية لشيء ما.
- make a leaflet about his/her school.
  - يصنع منشورًا عن مدرسته/مدرستها.

Did you know?

- The way you move gives other people information about your *personality. Each person has a unique way of moving, just like we each have our own handwriting. People who move in similar ways often become friends and work well together.

I can find it out!

- A person's personality is how they think and *behave. People are born with signs of their personalities, but they develop and change over years.

* personality	شخصية	* behave	يتصرف



Lesson 1



He's very clever
إنه ذكى جدًا



Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:

Main vocabulary



shy
خجول



calm
هادئ



clever
ذكى



polite
مؤدب



messy
فوضوى



organized
مُنظم



nervous
متوتر / عصبى

Extra vocabulary

a bit	قليلًا / إلى حد ما	friendly (adj.)	ودود
break	فترة الاستراحة	yet	حتى الآن
textbooks	الكتب الدراسية	already	بالفعل
extra	إضافي	copy	نسخة
worksheets	ورق تدريبات	worried (adj.)	قَلِق
tidy (adj.)	مرتب	helpful (adj.)	متعاون
intelligent (adj.)	ذكي	quiet (adj.)	هادئ
carefully	بحرص	correctly	بشكل صحيح

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs			أفعــال منتظمـة		
Present		Past	Present		Past
help	يساعد	helped	stay	يبقى	stayed
ask	يسأل	asked	need	يحتاج	needed
share	يتشارك	shared			
Irregular verbs			**أفعال غير منتظمة**		
Present		Past	Present		Past
meet	يقابل	met	know	يعرف	knew

Expressions and Phrases

get to know	يتعرف على	take you around	يأخذك في جولة بأنحاء المكان
don't worry	لا تقلق	good at	جيد في
welcome to ...	مرحبًا بك في ...	I'm not sure.	لست متأكدًا.
come on	تعال	show respect	يُظهر الاحترام

Definitions

friendly ودود	nice to others, helpful	لطيف مع الآخرين، متعاون
shy خجول	worried about talking to people, quiet	قلق من التحدث إلى الناس، هادئ
clever ذكى	intelligent, good at school work	ذكى، جيد فى العمل المدرسى
polite مهذب	speaks carefully and correctly, shows respect	يتحدث بحرص وبشكل صحيح، يظهر الاحترام
messy فوضوى	not tidy or organized	غير مرتب أو منظم
organized منظم	tidy, careful	مرتب، حريص
nervous متوتر (عصبى)	not calm, worried	غير هادئ، قلق



Let's say it right!

لاحظ أن حرف الـ (l) فى (calm) حرف (silent) صامت لا ينطق.

Check point

Choose the correct answer:

1 Salma is nice to others. She's (calm – friendly – shy – sad).

2 I'm (shy – messy – clever – nice). I worry about talking to people.

3 The living room is very (messy – polite – nervous – friendly).

4 He always shows respect to his grandmother. He's very (bad – excited – calm – polite).



Listen, read, nd role-play: استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:



Asser

Hi, Hazem! I'm Asser. You look worried. Is everything OK?

مرحبًا حازم! أنا آسر. تبدو قلقًا. هل كل شىء بخير؟



Hazem

Hi, Asser! It's my first day at school and I feel a bit nervous and shy.

آهلًا آسر! إنه يومى الأول فى المدرسة وأشعر ببعض التوتر والخجل.



Asser

Don't worry, we are all friendly. I can help you get to know the school.

لا تقلق، جميعنا ودودون للغاية. يمكننى أن أساعدك فى التعرف على المدرسة.



Hazem

Really! Can you?

فعلًا! أحقًا يمكنك ذلك؟



Asser

Sure. I can take you around, show you where your classroom is, and stay with you at break! Let's go meet some of my fiends. Look! There's Basel, Hey, Basel!

بالتأكيد. يمكننى أن أصطحبك وأريك مكان فصلك وأبقى معك فى فترة الاستراحة! دعنا نقابل بعضًا من أصدقائى. انظر! إنه باسل. أهلًا باسل.



Basel

Hi Asser!

أهلًا آسر!



Asser

Hazem, this is Basel. He's very clever and he's good at math. You can ask him if you need any help with your homework! Basel, this is Hazem. He's starting school here today.

حازم هذا باسل. إنه ذكى جدًا وجيد فى الرياضيات. يمكنك أن تسأله إذا كنت بحاجة إلى أى مساعدة فى واجبك المنزلى! باسل، هذا حازم. إنه يبدأ الدراسة هنا اليوم.



Basel

Hi, Hazem. Welcome to our school.

أهلًا، حازم. مرحبًا بك فى مدرستنا.



Asser
He's so polite!
إنه مهذب جدًّا!



Basel
Thanks.! Do you have all your books yet, Hazem?
شكرًا! هل معك كل كتبك يا حازم؟



Hazem
I'm not sure. I have a lot of books in my room at home but I'm a bit messy. I'm not sure which textbooks I already have.
لست متأكدًا. لدى الكثير من الكتب فى غرفتى فى المنزل ولكنى فوضوى بعض الشيء. لست متأكدًا من الكتب المدرسية التى أمتلكها بالفعل.



Basel
We can share my book today. And I have an extra copy of the worksheets ...
يمكننا مشاركة كتابى اليوم. ولدى نسخة إضافية من أوراق التدريبات ...



Hazem
Wow! You're really organized. Thanks, Basel!
رائع! أنت منظم جدًّا. شكرًا باسل!



Asser
Come on, I'll show you where the science classroom is.
تعال، سأريك أين يوجد فصل العلوم.

Language Notes

1 Making suggestions: لتقديم الاقتراحات:

Let's + (inf.) مصدر الفعل ....

e.g. - Let's go meet our friends.





Lesson 1



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and complete:

1 Hana .... new students at her school.

2 Hana shows the new students where their .... are.

3 Sometimes, the new students are nervous and ....

2 Read and match (A) with (B):

A

1 A: Do you have all your books yet?

2 Yara is very clever.

3 He's a messy person.

4 A: How did you feel on your first day at school?

B

a. (   ) He's not tidy or organized.

b. (   ) B: I felt nervous and shy.

c. (   ) B: I'm not sure.

d. (   ) extra copy of the worksheets.

e. (   ) She's intelligent, and good at school work.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

My name is Omar. I help new students get to know the school and their classrooms. I take them around, and I stay with them at the break. I helped a new student yesterday. His name is Ali. He was very nervous and shy because it was his first day at school. I showed him around the school because we're all friendly. I helped him with the textbooks. I shared my book with him, and I gave him extra copies of the worksheets.

A Choose the correct word from a, b, c, or d:

1 The general idea of the text is about ....

a) teachers at school b) helping new students

c) cleaners at school d) brothers at school

2 Ali was nervous and .... because it was his first day at school.

a) excited b) tidy c) shy d) calm

B Answer the following questions:

3 How does Omar help new students at his school?

....

4 What did Omar share with Ali?

....

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1 nervous – I – shy – feel – and – a bit.

....

2 share – can – today – We – books – my.

....

3 Amira – very – nice – is – helpful – and.

....

4 yet – have – Do – all – you – books – your?

....

5 Punctuate the following:

basel is clever and good at math

....

6 Write a paragraph of about 50–60 words using the following guiding elements:

مجاب عنه آخر الكتاب

"Helping new students at school"

- How do new students feel?
- How can you help them?

....

....

....

....



Lesson 2





We are proud of our school!
نحن نفخر بمدرستنا!



Listen and say: استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

website	موقع إلكترونى	building	مبنى
court	ملعب	gym (gymnasium)	صالة ألعاب رياضية

Extra vocabulary

modern (adj.)	حديث (عصرى)	map	خريطة
laboratories	معامل	equipment	أدوات
experiments	تجارب	benches	مقاعد
fountain	نافورة	information technology	تكنولوجيا المعلومات
desktop	مكتبى	gymnastics	رياضة بدنية
physical education	التربية الرياضية	department	قسم

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمـة

Present		Past	Present		Past
contact	يتواصل	contacted	borrow	يستعير	borrowed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
sit	يجلس	sat	feel	يشعر	felt

Expressions and Phrases

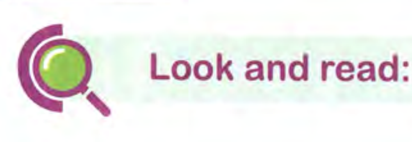
proud of	فخور بـ	find out	يكتشف	do experiments	يجرى تجارب
run (after school sports)	يدير/ يتابع	five-a-side football			كرة القدم الخماسية

Vocabulary Check

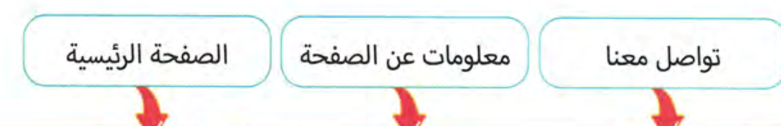
- أسماء الأماكن المشهورة والاختصارات تبدأ بأحرف كبيرة.

e.g. El Fouad School
IT= information technology

- لاحظ أن كلمة "equipment" ليس لها مفرد.



Look and read: انظر واقرأ:



El Fouad School | Home | About | Contact

Welcome to El Fouad School, a place which we are proud of. We are proud of our new, modern buildings and we are happy to show them to you. Please study the map and find out where the main[1] buildings are, and what we use them for.

(1) رئيسى

مرحبًا بكم فى مدرسة الفؤاد المكان الذى نفخر به. نحن فخورون بمبانينا الجديدة والحديثة ويسعدنا أن نعرضها لك. برجاء دراسة الخريطة ومعرفة أماكن المبانى الرئيسية وأغراض استخدامنا لها.

1 The Ahmed Zewail Building



This is the place where students study science. There are four classrooms and two new laboratories. These laboratories have all the equipment which classes need to do experiments.

مبنى أحمد زويل: هذا هو المكان الذى يدرس فيه الطلاب العلوم. هناك أربعة فصول دراسية ومعملان جديدان. تحتوى هذه المعامل على جميع المعدات التى تحتاجها الفصول لإجراء التجارب.

2 The West Court

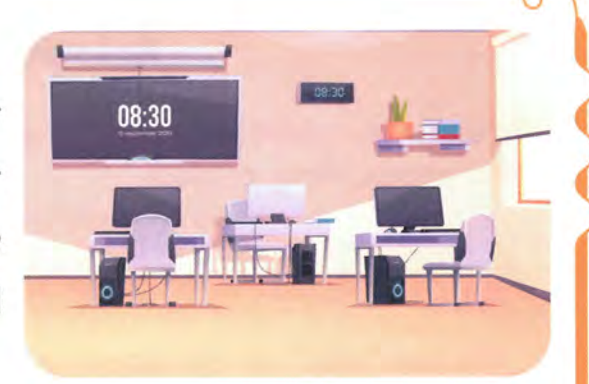
This is a large open area[2] where students spend time outside. There is a playground[3] and playing field[4]. There are also benches to sit on under the trees and a water fountain. Children can also grow plants with Mr Mahdi. He is the teacher who helps in the garden.

(2) منطقة مفتوحة
(3) ملعب
(4) ساحة للعب

الملعب الغربى: هذه منطقة مفتوحة كبيرة حيث يقضى الطلاب الوقت بالخارج. هناك ملعب وساحة للعب. هناك أيضًا مقاعد للجلوس عليها تحت الأشجار ونافورة مياه. يمكن للأطفال أيضًا زراعة النباتات مع الأستاذ مهدى. إنه المعلم الذى يساعد فى الحديقة.



3 The IT Building



This is the building where you can find our computer classrooms. Students come here for their Information Technology lessons. We have over 50 desktop computers, plus laptops (5) and tablets (6) which students can borrow.

مبنـى تـكنولوجيا المعلومـات: هـذا هـو المبنـى حيـث يمكنـك أن تجـد فصـول الكمبيوتـر لدينـا. يأتـى الطـلاب إلـى هنـا لـدروس تكنولوجيـا المعلومـات الخاصة بهـم. لدينا أكثـر مـن 50 جهـاز كمبيوتـر مكتبيًّا، بالإضافة إلى أجهـزة كمبيوتـر محمولة وأجهـزة لوحيـة يمكـن للطلاب استعارتها.

4 The 2024 Gym



The yellow building is our new gymnasium. We use it for basketball, handball, and gymnastics during physical education lessons. There are some teachers who run after school sports clubs here too, like five-a-side football (Mr Afifi, math department) and tennis (Mrs Manal, French department).

(5) كمبيوتر محمول

(6) جهاز لوحى (تابلت)

صالـة الألعـاب الرياضيـة 2024: المبنـى الأصفـر هـو صالـة الألعـاب الرياضيـة الجديـدة. نسـتخدمه فـى كـرة السـلة وكـرة اليـد والجمبـاز خـلال دروس التربيـة البدنيـة. هنـاك بعـض المعلميـن الذيـن يتولـون متابعـة النـوادى الرياضيـة المدرسـية هنـا أيضًـا، مثـل كـرة القـدم الخماسـية. (الأسـتاذ عفيفـى، قسـم الرياضيـات) والتنـس (الأسـتاذة منـال قسـم اللغـة الفرنسـية).

Check point

1 Where can the students spend time outside?

....

2 What is the "IT Building"?

....



Language Focus

Relative pronouns ضمائر الوصل

We use "who, which, and where" to give more information about a particular singular or plural person, thing, or place.

نستخدم «who, which, and where» لإعطاء المزيد من المعلومات حول شخص، شيء، أو مكان مفرد أو جمع.

who

We use "who" to talk about people. تستخدم «who» عند التحدث عن الأشخاص.



Mr Afifi is the teacher who runs the football club.

الأستاذ عفيفى هو المعلم الذى يدير نادى كرة القدم.

which

We use "which" to talk about things. نستخدم «which» للتحدث عن الأشياء.



These are the shoes which I wear to school.

هذا هو الحذاء الذى أرتديه للمدرسة.

where

We use "where" to talk about places.

نستخدم «where» للتحدث عن الأماكن.

This is the building where we do physical education.

هذا هو المبنى الذى نقوم فيه بالتربية البدنية.





When we use "who, which, or where", we don't need to repeat the subject of the sentence.

عندما نستخدم "who, which, where"، لا نحتاج إلى تكرار الفاعل فى الجملة.

Mr Afifi is the teacher. Mr Afifi runs the football club.

نحذف الفاعل المكرر فى الجملة الثانية ونضيف ضمير الوصل وتصبح جملة واحدة.

Mr Afifi is the teacher who runs the football club.

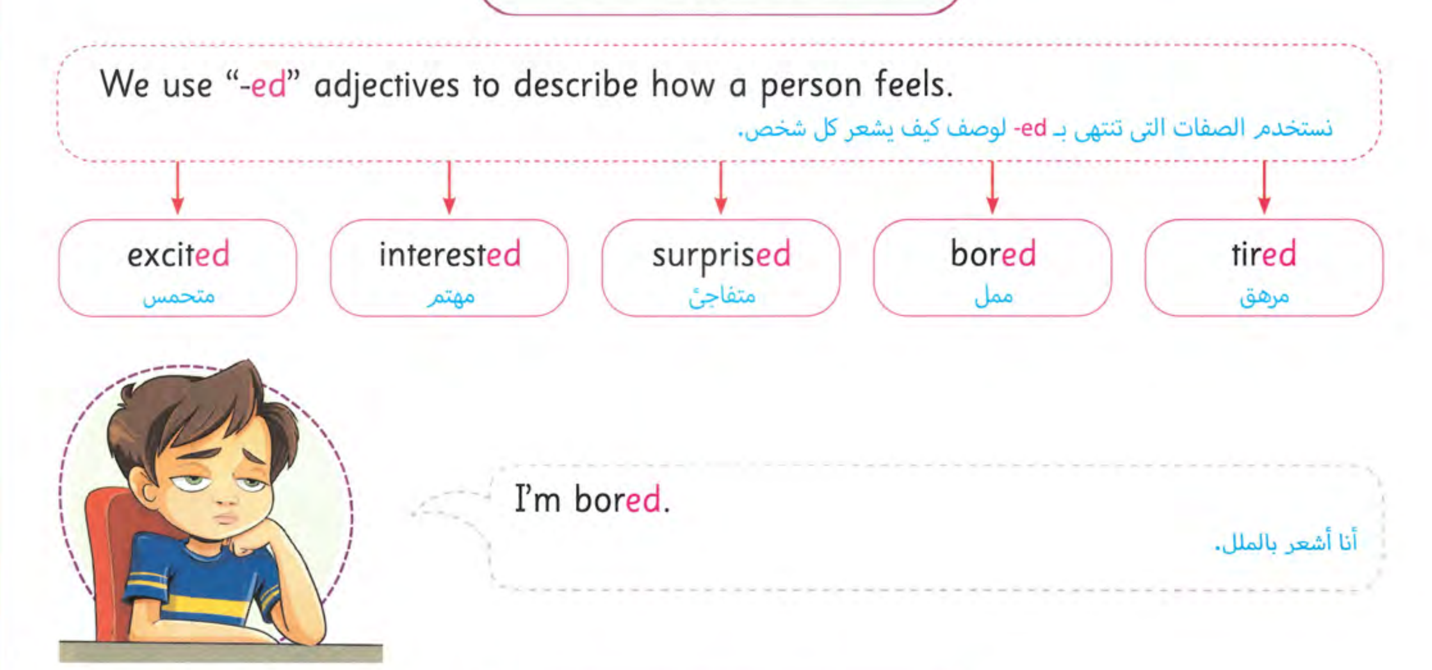
Check point

Choose the correct answer:

1 Mrs Mai is the teacher (where – what – who – which) teaches us English.
2 The supermarket is the place (who – where – which – when) we buy food. 
3 These are the notebooks (which – how – where – when) I take to school.



-ed adjectives

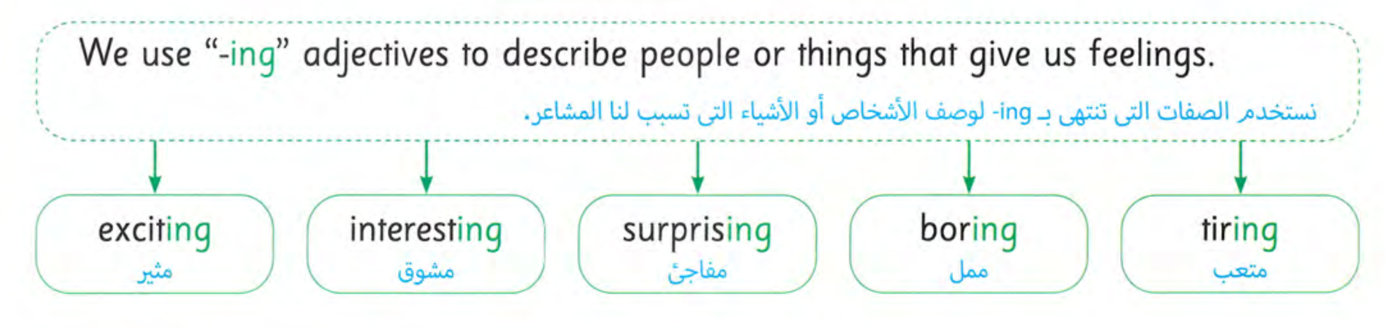


We use "-ed" adjectives to describe how a person feels.
نستخدم الصفات التى تنتهى بـ -ed لوصف كيف يشعر كل شخص.

excited	interested	surprised	bored	tired
متحمس	مهتم	متفاجئ	ممل	مرهق

I'm bored.
أنا أشعر بالملل.

-ing adjectives



We use "-ing" adjectives to describe people or things that give us feelings.
نستخدم الصفات التى تنتهى بـ -ing لوصف الأشخاص أو الأشياء التى تسبب لنا المشاعر.

exciting	interesting	surprising	boring	tiring
مثير	مشوق	مفاجئ	ممل	متعب



The TV series is really exciting.
المسلسل التلفزيونى مشوق جدًّا.

Check point

Choose the correct answer:

1 My birthday party was (surprising – excited – surprised – tired).
2 The tennis match is (excited – bored – boring – interested). I don't like it.
3 I'm very (interest – boring – interested – interesting) in English books.

Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

Wandaland is a fantasy[1] TV series[2] which is popular with people of all age groups. It's interesting because it takes place[3] in the future on a planet called Wanda. This is a world where humans[4] live because the Earth is now too hot.

«واندالاند» هو مسلسل تليفزيونى خيالى يحظى بشعبية بين الناس من جميع الفئات العمرية. إنه ممتع لأنه يحدث فى المستقبل على كوكب اسمه «واندا». إنه عالم حيثما يعيش الناس لأن الأرض أصبحت الآن حارة جدًّا.

(1)	خيالى
(2)	مسلسل
(3)	يحدث
(4)	بشر



The series tells th e story of a boy called Frey who wants to return[5] to Earth to look for[6] his family. Frey is a clever, quiet boy who finds life on Wanda where he doesn't have many friends, but he thinks perhaps his family is still alive[7], so he decides to hide on a spaceship[8] which is traveling to Earth.

(5)	يعود
(6)	يبحث عن
(7)	على قيد الحياة
(8)	سفينة فضاء

المسلسل يحكى قصة ولد يسمى «فرى» وهو يريد أن يعود إلى الأرض ليبحث عن عائلته. «فرى» هو ولد ذكى وهادئ وجد حياته على كوكب «واندا» حيثما لا يملك أصدقاء كثيرين. ولكنه يعتقد أنه من المحتمل أن تكون عائلته على قيد الحياة، ولذلك قرر أن يختبئ على متن المركبة الفضائية المتجهة إلى الأرض.

The problem is he doesn't really know where his parents are and he might not find them. I'm excited to see what happens next!

المشكلة أنه لا يعلم حقًّا أين والداه، ومن المحتمل ألا يجدهما.

أنا متشوق لأرى ما سيحدث فيما بعد!



Lesson 2



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and complete:

1 The school's buildings are .... and new.

2 Ahmed studies .... in the Ahmed Zewail Building.

3 They have .... in the West Court.

2 Read and match (A) with (B):

A

1 This is the uniform ...

2 There are some teachers ...

3 This is a large open area where ...

4 The children feel bored ...

B

a. ( ) students have recess. SB

b. ( ) which I wear at school.

c. ( ) use a map.

d. ( ) who run after school sports clubs here too. SB

e. ( ) when there's nothing to do.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 We do science experiments in the ....

a) playground b) laboratory c) gymnasium d) IT building

2 This is the street .... my uncle lives. SB

a) when b) what c) where d) who

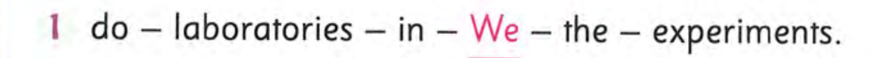
3 The book is really ....

a) interesting b) interested c) excited d) tired

4 We play basketball and handball during the .... lessons.

a) science b) IT c) physical education d) French

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:



1 do – laboratories – in – We – the – experiments.

....

2 The yellow – is – gymnasium – our – building – new.

....



3 where – This – work – is – the office – I.

....

4 night – really – was – last – I – tired.

....

5 Punctuate the following:

i'm really interested in science

....



6 Write a paragraph of about 50–60 words using the following guiding elements:



"Your school"

How many laboratories?	two laboratories
What do you play at the gymnasium?	basketball and handball



....

....

....

....

....



Lesson 3







Listen and say: استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

Hare	أنثى الأرنب البرى	stomach	معدة
forest	غابة	lake	بحيرة

Extra vocabulary

sunny (adj.)	مشمس	grass	عشب	suddenly	فجأة
loud (adj.)	صاخب/ عال	noise	إزعاج/ ضجيج	voice	صوت
scared (adj.)	خائف	clever (adj.)	ذكى	favorite (adj.)	مفضل
delicious (adj.)	لذيذ	the biggest (adj.)	الأكبر	the strongest (adj.)	الأقوى
the bravest (adj.)	الأشجع	mice	فئران	quickly	بسرعة
away	بعيد	sorry (adj.)	آسف	finally	أخيرًا

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمـة

Present		Past	Present		Past
move	يتحرك	moved	shout	يصرخ	shouted

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
lie	يرقد	lay	come	يأتى	came
speak	يتحدث	spoke	tell	يخبر	told

Expressions and Phrases

Please help me!	من فضلك ساعدنى!	look at	ينظر إلى
Stay where you are!	ابق حيث أنت!	for as everybody knows	كما يعلم الجميع



Hare gets scared أنثى الأرنب خائفة

Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

The beginning



It's a sunny day, and Hare lies in the grass. Suddenly, her stomach makes a loud noise. Hare remembers the carrots in her kitchen. She's hungry!

إنه يوم مشمس، والأرنبة البرية ترقد (نائمة) على العشب. فجأة، تصدر معدتها ضوضاء عالية. تتذكر الأرنبة الجزر فى مطبخها. هى جائعة!

The middle

Hare runs back home. But when she gets to her door, she stops. What is that noise? Something is moving inside Hare's house! "Is somebody there?" asks Hare. "Stay where you are!" says a loud voice. Hare is very surprised. Who is in her house? Then the voice speaks again. "Hare, don't come in. If you come in, I'll eat you. Hares are my favorite food."



Hare is very scared. The animal which is in her house wants to eat her. Hare runs to the forest where her clever friend Monkey lives.
"Monkey, please help me!" says Hare. "There's an animal in my house, and it wants to eat me!"
Monkey looks interested. "An animal? Let's go and see," Monkey says.
They go back to Hare's house. "Who's in there?" shouts Monkey.
A voice answers, "Monkey, don't come in. I'll eat you if you come in. Hares are my favorite food, but monkeys are also delicious."

الأرنبة البرية تركض للمنزل، ولكن عندما تصل إلى بابها، تتوقف. ما هذه الضوضاء؟ شيء ما يتحرك داخل منزل الأرنبة البرية!

«هل يوجد أحد هناك؟» تسأل الأرنبة البرية.

«ابق حيث أنت!» يقول صوت عالٍ.

الأرنبة البرية متفاجئة جدًّا. مَنْ فى منزلها؟ ثم يتحدث الصوت مرة أخرى. «الأرنبة البرية، لا تدخلى. إذا دخلتِ فسآكلك. الأرانب البرية طعامى المفضل».

الأرنبة البرية خائفة جدًّا. الحيوان الذى فى منزلها يريد أن يأكلها. الأرنبة البرية تركض إلى الغابة حيث تعيش صديقتها القردة الذكية.

«قردة، ساعدينى أرجوك!» تقول الأرنبة البرية: «يوجد حيوان بمنزلى، ويريد أن يأكلنى!».

القردة تبدو مهتمة. «حيوان؟ هيا بنا نذهب ونرى» تقول القردة.

يعودون إلى منزل الأرنبة البرية. «من بالداخل؟» تصرخ القردة.

يجيب صوت، «قردة، لا تأتى. سآكلك إذا أتيت. الأرانب البرية طعامى المفضل، ولكن القرود أيضًا لذيذة».

Monkey and Hare look at each other. They are both very scared. They run to the lake where their friend Elephant lives. "There's an animal which eats hares and monkeys in Hare's house," they tell Elephant. "We need your help!"
"Don't worry!" says Elephant. "I'm coming! I'm the biggest, strongest, bravest animal in the world. Nobody can eat me!"
Elephant goes to Hare's door. "I'm coming in!" he shouts.
"Stop!" says the animal inside. "I'm hungry and I love to eat ..."
"You can't eat me!" shouts Elephant. "I'm the biggest, the strongest ..."

القردة والأرنبة البرية ينظران إلى بعضهما البعض. كلتاهما خائفة جدًّا. تركضان إلى البحيرة حيث يعيش صديقهما الفيل. «هناك حيوان يأكل الأرانب البرية والقردة فى منزل الأرنبة البرية»، تخبران الفيل. «نحن نحتاج مساعدتك!».

«لا تقلقا!» يقول الفيل. «أنا قادم! أنا الأكبر، الأقوى، أشجع حيوان فى العالم. لا أحد يستطيع أن يأكلنى!».

الفيل يذهب إلى باب الأرنبة البرية. «أنا قادم!» وهو يصرخ.

«توقف!» يقول الحيوان بالداخل. «أنا جائع وأحب أن آكل ...».

«لا تستطيع أن تأكلنى!» يصرخ الفيل. «أنا الأكبر، الأقوى ...».

The end



Suddenly, Hare's door opens, and a small mouse runs out. Elephant jumps high in the air! He's very scared. For as everybody knows, elephants are afraid of mice!

"Help! A mouse! A mouse!" cries Elephant and he quickly runs away.

Mouse looks at Hare and Monkey. "I'm sorry," she says. "Are you angry?"

Hare and Monkey start to laugh. "No, we're not angry," they say. "Elephant's face was so funny!"

They all laugh again. Then Hare goes inside to finally eat her carrots.

فجأة، يفتح باب الأرنبة البرية، ويركض فأر صغير للخارج. الفيل يقفز عاليًا فى الهواء! هو خائف جدًا. فكما يعرف الجميع، الفيلة تخاف من الفئران!

«ساعدونى! فأر! فأر!». يبكى الفيل وهو يهرب بسرعة.

تنظر الفأرة إلى الأرنبة البرية والقردة. تقول «أنا آسفة، هل أنت غاضبة؟».

تبدأ الأرنبة البرية والقردة فى الضحك. تقولان: «لا، لسنا غاضبتين،» «وجه الفيل كان مضحكًا جدًا!».

كلهم يضحكون مرة أخرى. ثم تذهب الأرنبة البرية إلى الداخل لتأكل جزرها أخيرًا.

Check point

1 Where was the scary animal?

....

2 Who is on Hare's house?

....



Tip!

- When characters speak in stories, we show it with punctuation called **quotation marks**:

عندما تتحدث الشخصيات فى القصص، نعرض ما يقولون بعلامات ترقيم تسمى علامات الاقتباس:

"Hares are my favorite food." "Don't worry!" «الأرانب البرية طعامى المفضل». «لا تقلقا!».

- **We put quotation marks before and after the sentence.** نضع علامات الترقيم قبل وبعد الجملة.

- **We use verbs like say, shout, and ask to say who is speaking.**

نستخدم أفعالًا مثل: يقول، يصرخ، ويسأل لنذكر من يتحدث.

e.g. "What do you mean?" asked Monkey. «ماذا تقصد؟» سأل القرد.

e.g. "I thought you were angry," said Mouse. «كنت أظن أنك غاضب» قال الفأر.



Pronunciation



Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:

/ʌ/

cut يقص (يقطع)	truck عربة نقل	nuts مكسرات	duck بطة	honey عسل
brush فرشاة	onion بصلة	hut كوخ	bug حشرة	stuck عالق
uncle عم/خال	hungry جائع	stomach معدة	funny مضحك	come تعال

/æ/





Estimating numbers
الأرقام التقديرية



Look, read, and notice: انظر، اقرأ ولاحظ:

When we don't need to calculate exactly, we estimate an approximate number. We can round decimal numbers up or down to the nearest whole number:

عندما لا نحتاج أن نحسب بدقة، فإننا نقدر رقمًا تقريبيًا. يمكننا تقريب الأعداد العشرية لأعلى أو أقل لأقرب رقم كامل:

1.88 → 2.00　　3.12 → 3.00

e.g. Sara's bedroom wall needs painting. Sara calculates how much paint she needs to paint the wall. She measures the walls and writes down the measurements. Then she looks on the internet to see how many cans of paint she needs.



جدار غرفة نوم سارة يحتاج للدهان. تحسب سارة كمية الطلاء التى تحتاجه لدهان الجدران.

تقيس الجدران وتكتب القياسات. ثم تنظر على الإنترنت لتعرف عدد علب الطلاء التى تحتاجها.

Bedroom walls measurements

قياسات جدران غرفة النوم

Wall
= h 3.85 m × w 8.90 m

The answer:

To estimate how much paint she needs, Sara rounds her measurements up to the nearest whole number, then multiply them to estimate the area to paint:

لتقدير كمية الطلاء التى تحتاجها. تقرب سارة قياساتها إلى أقرب رقم صحيح، ثم تضربها لتقدير المساحة التى تريد طلاءها:

3.85 → (4.00) X 8.90 → (9.00) = 36 m^2



Lesson 3



Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and complete:

1 The story is about a ...., a monkey, an elephant, and a mouse.

2 The .... scared the hare and the monkey.

3 Everyone .... at the end.

2 Read and match (A) with (B):

A

1 I painted the walls ...

2 The duck is swimming ...

3 The nearest number to 5.65 ...

4 It's a sunny day, ...

B

a. (   ) is 10.00.

b. (   ) with a brush.

c. (   ) and Hare lies in the grass.

d. (   ) is 6.00.

e. (   ) in the lake.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

It's a sunny day, and Hare is hungry! When she gets to her door, she hears a voice. Hare is very scared. The animal in her house tells her not to come in because he will eat her. She asks the monkey to help her. Monkey looks interested. The animal in Hare's house tells the monkey not to come in because he will eat her. Monkey and Hare are both very scared. They ask the elephant to help them. Elephant goes to Hare's door. Suddenly, Hare's door opens, and a small mouse runs out. Elephant jumps high in the air! They all laugh.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The underlined pronoun "she" refers to the ....

a) mouse b) Hare c) monkey d) elephant

2 The .... was inside the house.

a) mouse b) Hare c) monkey d) elephant

B Answer the following questions:

3 Who helped Hare when she asked? ....

4 Why did they all laugh? ....

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:



1 Harry – nuts – Happy – some – has.

....

2 lies – grass – the – Hare – in.

....

3 inside – house – Hare – her – a noise – hears.

....

4 a ball – The – playing – cat – is – with.

....

5 Punctuate the following:

he drives a white, big truck

....

6 Write a paragraph of about 50–60 words using the following guiding elements:



"Your favorite story"



- What's the name of the story?
- What is your favorite story about?

....

....

....

....



Lessons 4 & 5





Writing



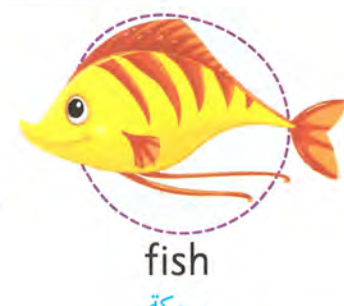
Look and read: انظر واقرأ:



Main vocabulary


lizard
سحلية


bird
طائر


fish
سمكة


cat
قطة

Cats Are the Best Pets



Cats are my favorite animals and I think they make the best pets(1). They are beautiful with soft(2) fur(3) which is nice to touch(4). They are clean and calm animals which are usually friendly. They like people but they are independent(5), so you don't need to take them for a walk every day. It is true that cats have sharp(6) claws(7) and teeth, but they only use them when they are scared. People also say that when you pet(8) a cat, it makes you happy, so they are good for your well-being, too.

(1)	حيوانات أليفة
(2)	ناعم
(3)	فرو
(4)	يلمس
(5)	مستقل
(6)	حاد
(7)	مخالب
(8)	يدلل/يلاطف

القطط هى أفضل الحيوانات الأليفة

القطط هى حيواناتى المفضلة وأعتقد أنها أفضل حيوان أليف. إنها جميلة بفراء ناعمة جميلة الملمس. هى حيوانات نظيفة وهادئة وعادة ما تكون ودودة. إنها تحب الناس ولكنها مستقلة، لذلك لست بحاجة لأخذها فى نزهة كل يوم. صحيح أن القطط لديها مخالب وأسنان حادة، لكنها تستخدمها فقط عندما تكون خائفة. يقول الناس أيضًا إنه عندما تدلل قطة، تجعلك سعيدًا، لذا فهى جيدة لصحتك أيضًا.

Tip! You can use but to join two contrasting ideas in a sentence. For example, you can mention a negative point, then use but to explain why it's not really a problem.

يمكنك استخدام «لكن» لضم فكرتين متناقضتين فى جملة. على سبيل المثال، يمكنك ذكر نقطة سلبية، ثم استخدام «لكن» لشرح لماذا لا يمثل ذلك مشكلة حقًا.

e.g.
I like most types of fruit, but I don't like mangoes.
It is true that cats have sharp claws and teeth, but they only use them when they are scared.

صحيح أن القطط لديها مخالب وأسنان حادة، لكنها تستخدمها فقط عندما تكون خائفة.





Look, read, and notice:

انظر، اقرأ، ولاحظ:

Steps to make a leaflet:

خطوات إعداد منشور:

A Make a list or draw the buildings in your school.

قم بعمل قائمة أو ارسم المبانى فى مدرستك.

B Include any areas where you can have meals, do sports, or relax at recess.

قم بضم أى مناطق يمكنك فيها تناول وجبات الطعام أو ممارسة الرياضة أو الاسترخاء فى فترة الراحة.

C Include the entrance (s) to the school and the streets around it.

قم بإضافة مدخل المدرسة والشوارع المحيطة بها.

D Write the "key" for the map. Write the heading KEY. List the numbers and names of each building.

اكتب مفتاح «الخريطة». اكتب المفاتيح الرئيسية. وقم بعمل قائمة بالأرقام والأسماء الخاصة بكل مبنى.

E Check the spelling, grammar, and punctuation.

تحقق من الإملاء والقواعد اللغوية وعلامات الترقيم.

F Display your map.

اعرض خريطتك.

Number 1 is the Science laboratories. We do experiments in them.
Number 2 is the Information technology building. We have our IT lessons there. It has a lot of computers and tablets in it.
Number 3 is the gymnasium where we exercise.
Number 4 is the playground where I play basketball.





Lessons 4 & 5



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

1 Ola has a pet dog. ( )

2 Cats have soft fur which is nice to touch. ( )

3 You need to take them for a walk every day. ( )

2 Read and match (A) with (B):

A

1 Cats have beautiful, ...

2 Cats have sharp ...

3 When you pet a cat, ...

4 Cats are clean and ...

B

a. ( ) it makes you happy.

b. ( ) calm animals.

c. ( ) to find food for him.

d. ( ) soft fur.

e. ( ) claws and teeth.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Cats like people, ... they are independent.

a) and b) so c) by d) but

2 I think cats make the best ....

a) food b) pets c) drawings d) toys

3 My new school is great, ... it's far from my house.

a) so b) and c) but d) for

4 Cats have beautiful, ...fur.

a) soft b) hard c) bad d) ugly

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1 to touch – The – nice – cat's – is – fur.

....

2 animals – Cats – calm – are – and – clean.

....

3 animals – favorite – Cats – my – are.

....

4 sharp – teeth – Cats – have – claws – and.

....

5 Punctuate the following:

you don t need to take them for a walk every day.

....

6 Write a paragraph of about 50–60 words using the following guiding elements:



"Your favorite pet"

- What's your favorite pet?
- Why is it your favorite pet?

....

....

....

....

Unit 2 REVIEW





Vocabulary


shy


calm


clever


polite

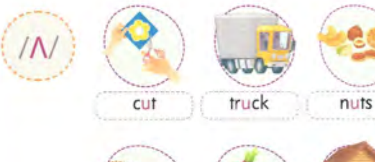

messy


organized


nervous

Pronunciation

/ʌ/





cut, truck, nuts, duck, honey







brush, onion, hut, bug, stuck

uncle, hungry, stomach, funny, come

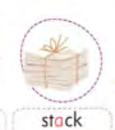
/æ/








cat, track, happy, Harry, hat




bag, stack, ankle, animal, angry

Language Focus

Relative pronouns

who

We use "who" to talk about people.

Mr Afifi is the teacher who runs the football club.



which

We use "which" to talk about things.

These are the shoes which I wear to school.



where

We use "where" to talk about places.

This is the building where we do physical education.




-ed adjectives

We use "-ed" adjectives" to describe how people feel.



excited — interested — surprised — bored — tired

-ing adjectives

We use "-ing" adjectives to describe people or things that give us feelings.

exciting — interesting — surprising — boring — tiring

Unit 2 CHECK YOUR VOCABULARY



Lesson 1

مهذب	....	ودود	....
فوضوى	....	خجول	....
منظم	....	هادئ	....
متوتر	....	ذكى	....

Lesson 2

موقع إلكترونى	....	مبنى	....
ملعب	....	صالة ألعاب رياضية	....
معامل	....	خريطة	....
تجارب	....	أدوات	....
مقاعد	....	نافورة	....
التربية الرياضية	....	رياضة بدنية	....

Lesson 3

أنثى الأرنب البرى	....	معدة	....
غابة	....	بحيرة	....
عشب	....	خائف	....
الأشجع	....	فئران	....
عسل	....	يقص/ يقطع	....
فرشاة	....	عربة نقل	....
بصلة	....	مكسرات	....
قطة	....	بطة	....
سعيد	....	طريق/ مسار	....

تأكد من حفظك لكلمات الدروس قبل البدء فى إجابة اختبار الوحدة.

WRITING TIME



How to write about helping new students at school:

- My name is + اسمك and I often help new students.
- New students often feel + شعور الطلاب الجدد because + السبب
- I help them + طريقة المساعدة.

My name is Yara and I often help new students at school. New students often feel nervous and shy because it's their first day at school. I show them around the school. I sometimes stay with them at the break, too. When they don't have their textbooks, I share my books with them.

How to write about a place which you are proud of:

- Welcome to (اسم المكان), a place which we are proud of.
- (اسم المبنى) is (وصف المكان) .... .
- (اسم مبنى آخر) is (وصف المكان) .... .
- We use it for (استخدامات المكان) .... .

Welcome to El Fouad School, a place which we are proud of. The Ahmed Zewail Building is the place where students study science. The West Court is a large open area where students have recess. The 2024 Gym is our new gymnasium. We use it for basketball, handball, and gymnastics during physical education lessons.

How to write about your favorite pet:

- I like (اسم الحيوان).
- I think + (صفة مميزة لهذا الحيوان).
- They are (صفة أخرى مميزة لهذا الحيوان) .... .

I like cats. They're my favorite animals. I think they make the best pets. They are beautiful with soft fur. They are clean and calm. They're also independent. I don't have to take it for a walk every day.

لكي تتمكن من كتابة الموضوعات بشكل مميز، اتبع هذه الخطوات.

STUDENT'S BOOK CORNER

1 Match the words to their meanings:

1 friendly	a. not tidy or organized
2 shy	b. nice to others, helpful
3 clever	c. tidy, careful
4 polite	d. intelligent, good at school work
5 messy	e. not calm, worried
6 organized	f. worried about talking to people, quiet
7 nervous	g. speaks carefully and correctly, shows respect

2 Complete the sentences with who, which, or where:

1 Dalia is the girl .... sits next to me in the English class.

2 An ostrich is a big bird .... can't fly.

3 This is the street .... my uncle lives.

4 I really love the red flowers .... grow in our garden.

5 The supermarket is the place .... we buy food.

3 Choose the correct adjective to complete the sentence:

1 Hi Fareeda, I'm (surprised – surprising) to see you!

2 The children feel (bored – boring) when there is nothing to do.

3 His birthday party was (excited – exciting).

4 I'm really (interested – interesting) in Ancient Egypt.

5 I was really (tired – tiring) last night.

6 The results of the students' last test are (surprised – surprising) .



1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

which – where – what – who

I'm Adam. This is my school. This is .... I learn. These are my books. They are the books .... I read and study from. This is Mr. Ahmed. He's the person .... runs the school. This is the playground. This is where I play with my friends and eat my sandwiches.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The movie was ....

a) interested b) excited c) exciting d) tired

2 This is the street .... I ride my bike.

a) where b) which c) when d) who

3 I'm .... to see my cousins here.

a) surprising b) surprised c) tiring d) excited

4 This is the baker .... made the cake.

a) who b) where c) what d) which

3 Correct the underlined words:

1 This is the shirt <u>what</u> I wear to work. (..............................)

2 I'm <u>tiring</u>. I can't go to the club. (..............................)

3 The book was <u>bored</u>. I didn't finish it. (..............................)

4 Dalia is polite and clever, <u>for</u> she isn't friendly. (..............................)







1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

1 The 2024 Gymnasium is the yellow building. ( )

2 There are some students who run after school sports clubs. ( )

3 Mr Afifi is a math teacher. ( )

2 Listen and complete:

1 Amira has a pet ....

2 Cats are beautiful, clean, and ....

3 Cats are ...., I don't need to take my cat for a walk.

Reading

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 My sister's birthday is today. She's very ....

a) exciting b) interested c) excited d) boring

2 These are the shoes .... I wear to play football.

a) who b) which c) how d) where

3 My mother is very .... She's very nice to others.

a) clever b) nervous c) shy d) friendly

4 My uncle drives a big, white ....

a) truck b) cut c) track d) stack

4 Read and match (A) with (B):

A

1 The gymnasium is where ...

2 Cats are independent animals.

3 The TV show ...

4 My brother is really clever.

B

a. ( ) You don't need to take them for a walk every day.

b. ( ) very relaxed.

c. ( ) He's intelligent and good at school work.

d. ( ) we do physical education.

e. ( ) is really interesting.

5 Read the text and answer the questions:

My name is Lama. I'm in grade six. I love my school. My school has many new, modern buildings. There's The Ahmed Zewail Building. This is the place where we study science. There are four classrooms and two laboratories in that building. There is also The West Court. It's a large open area where students can spend time outside. Here are also benches to sit on under the trees and a water fountain. We have a new gymnasium, we use it for basketball, handball and gymnastics during physical education lessons. I always enjoy my day at school.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Lama's school is ....

a) ancient b) old c) small d) modern

2 The underlined word "Court" means ....

a) classroom b) house c) park d) playground

B Answer the following questions:

3 How many laboratories are there in the school? ....

4 Summarize the passage in two sentences. ....

Writing

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1 to do – This is – where – experiments – learn – I. ....

2 Salma – tidy – is – organized – or – not. ....

3 tired – My – was – father – yesterday – really. ....

4 are – sit on – There – benches – the trees – to – under. ....

7 Punctuate the following:

nadine is kind and friendly

....

8 Write a paragraph of about 50-60 words using the following guiding elements:

مجاب عنه آخر الكتاب

"Your school"

new and modern – West court

....

....

....

....



Assess your progress ★★★★★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practice more	Solve more exams	Well done!

OCTOBER MONTHLY TEST







1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

1 I sometimes help my aunt at the community garden. ( )
2 The community garden is a small green space. ( )
3 Lots of people offer to help us. ( )

2 Listen and complete:

1 Ola .... new students at her school.
2 Ali was very .... and shy.
3 Hana helped Ali to stay calm because they're all ....

Reading

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 These are my gloves .... I wear to work.
a) who b) when c) which d) where
2 We usually .... tomatoes, peppers, onions, and lettuce.
a) plant b) make c) play d) had
3 Omar is intelligent and good at school work. He's very ....
a) calm b) nervous c) polite d) clever
4 I always eat healthy food. I .... eat pizza.
a) never b) sometimes c) often d) occasionally

4 Read and match (A) with (B):

A
1 The movie was ...
2 Hani is very polite.
3 My uncle drives a ...
4 A: How often do you ride your bike?

B
a. ( ) big, white truck.
b. ( ) really interesting.
c. ( ) B: I sometimes ride my bike.
d. ( ) not calm, worried.
e. ( ) He shows respect to everyone.

5 Read the text and answer the questions:

I'm Salma. I moved to a new city with a new school. I was very nervous and shy on the first day at school, but I met Lara. She helped me get to know the school. She took me around the school and showed me where my classrooms are. She also stayed with

me at the break. She helped me get the books and the worksheets I need. She's a very kind person. Now I feel happy and I love my new school.

A Choose the correct word from a, b, c, or d:

1 Salma moved to a new city with a new ....

a) job b) school c) sport d) hospital

2 Lara .... with me at the break.

a) stayed b) sang c) taught d) knew

B Answer the following questions:

3 How did Lara help Salma? ....

4 How does Salma feel now? ....

Writing

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1 share – We – book – today – my – can. ....

2 noise – a loud – stomach – Her – makes. ....

3 garden – selfish – I – was – about – my. ....

4 look – over – the – We – after – forests – time. ....

7 Punctuate the following:

how often do you cook dinner

....

8 Write an email of about 50–60 words to your friend telling him about your community garden:

مجاب عنه آخر الكتاب

From : ....

To : ....

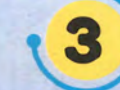
Subject : ....

....

....

....

....



Unit 3

Vacation plans

خطط لقضاء العطلة

Unit Overview

Student's book Exercises 

Practice More 

Answers 100% 

- **By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:**
  - listen, read, research, and write about making vacation plans.
  - talk about facts using clauses with "if" or "when".
  - talk about when something happens using prepositions of time.
  - read and listen to determine the central message.
  - practice saying the initial consonant sounds /w/ and /v/.
  - write a blog about a place he/she likes visiting.
  - research and make a brochure about a vacation destination.

- **بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون التلميذ قادرًا على أن:**
  - يستمع، يقرأ، يبحث ويكتب عن خطط لقضاء العطلة.
  - يتحدث عن الحقائق باستخدام عبارات بها «if» و «when».
  - يتحدث عن متى يحدث شيء ما باستخدام حروف الجر الخاصة بالوقت.
  - يقرأ ويستمع ليحدد الفكرة الأساسية (المغزى) .
  - يتدرب على نطق الأصوات الساكنة فى بداية الكلمة مثل /w/ و /v/.
  - يكتب مدونة عن مكان يحب زيارته.
  - يبحث ويقوم بعمل كتيب عن وجهة العطلة.

Did you know?

- When you see it from the air, the Nile Valley is in the shape of a fan. In the north, where it opens into the delta, it is wide. In the south, where it passes between desert *cliffs, it is narrow.

I can find it out!

- If we see Egypt from the air, we can see Delta. It's a big green area. Brown areas are deserts. There are many cities in Egypt like Cairo, Alexandria, Port Said, Aswan, and Luxor.

*cliffs منحدرات



Lesson 1



Let's go quad biking on Tuesday
دعنا نركب الدراجات الرباعية يوم الثلاثاء



Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:

Main vocabulary


explore the souks
يستكشف الأسواق


climb the Bab Zuweila minaret
يتسلق (يصعد إلى) مئذنة باب زويلة


take photos for the school project
يلتقط صورًا من أجل مشروع مدرسى


go quad biking in the desert
يركب الدراجات الرباعية فى الصحراء


ride on a rollercoaster
يركب قطار الملاهى


visit the Manial Palace Museum
يزور متحف قصر المنيل



Let's say it right!

- لاحظ أن حرفى الـ (ph) فى كلمة (photo) ينطقان (ف) /f/.
- لاحظ أن حرفى الـ (ua) فى كلمة (quad) ينطقان /wa/.

Extra vocabulary

excited (adj.) متحمس	vacation عطلة	places أماكن
theme park مدينة الملاهى	outside بالخارج	interesting (adj.) شيق / مثير للاهتمام
desert صحراء	Giza الجيزة	late afternoon فى وقت متأخر من الظهيرة
sunset الغروب	near قريب/بالقرب من	

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs		أفعـــال منتظمـة	
Present	Past	Present	Past
try يجرب	tried	travel يسافر	traveled
love يحب	loved	arrive يصل	arrived
watch يشاهد / يراقب	watched	explore يستكشف	explored
Irregular verbs		**أفعال غير منتظمة**	
Present	Past	Present	Past
go يذهب	went	take يأخذ	took
ride يركب	rode	come يأتى	came

Expressions and Phrases

Why don't we try ...? لماذا لا نجرب ...؟	look interesting يبدو مثيرًا للاهتمام
Like what? مثل ماذا؟	take the bus يستقل الأتوبيس
over the city فوق المدينة (يغطى المدينة)	come back to يعود إلى
What else ...? ماذا أيضًا ...؟	here we come إننا قادمون

Check point

Choose the correct answer:

1. Let's (take – explore – climb – go) the souks on Sunday.
2. I can (take – arrive – go – visit) the Manial Palace Museum.
3. I will spend my summer (match – vacation – wedding – birthday) in Aswan.
4. I think he (gets – takes – goes – explores) the bus to work.



Listen, read, and role-play: استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:



Samer

I'm excited about our vacation this week, Basel.

أنا متحمس بشأن عطلتنا هذا الأسبوع يا باسل.





Me too! Why don't we try new places. We can travel to Cairo. There are lots to see there.

أنا أيضًا! لماذا لا نجرب أماكن جديدة. يمكننا السفر إلى القاهرة. يوجد الكثير لرؤيته هناك.



Samer

Yes. We can visit the Manial Palace Museum first. If we go to the museum on Sunday, on Monday we can take photos for my school project.

نعم، يمكننا زيارة متحف قصر المنيل أولًا. إذا قمنا بزيارة المتحف يوم الأحد، يوم الإثنين يمكننا التقاط صور لمشروعى المدرسى.



Basel

Okay, cool! My Mom can go with us. She loves museums. Let's also go to the theme park and ride on a rollercoaster!

حسنًا، رائع! يمكن لأمى المجىء معنا. هى تحب المتاحف. دعنا نذهب أيضًا إلى مدينة الملاهى ونركب قطار الملاهى!



Samer

Okay! Let's do that on Tuesday. There are also some places outside Cairo that look interesting.

حسنًا! دعنا نفعل ذلك يوم الثلاثاء. هناك أيضًا بعض الأماكن خارج القاهرة التى تبدو مثيرة للاهتمام.



Basel

Like what?

مثل ماذا؟



Samer

We can go quad biking in the desert in Giza. If we take the bus, we will arrive in about 30 minutes.

يمكننا ركوب الدراجات الرباعية فى صحراء الجيزة. إذا استقللنا الباص، فسنصل بعد حوالى ٣٠ دقيقة.





Basel

Great! We can go early on Wednesday and come back to the hotel before evening.
Yes. What else we can do?

عظيم! يمكننا الذهاب باكرًا يوم الأربعاء ونعود للفندق قبل المساء.
نعم. ماذا يمكننا أن نفعل أيضًا؟





Samer

Let's climb the Bab Zuweila minaret on Thursday. It's difficult, but the view from the top is beautiful. If we go there in the late afternoon, we can watch the sunset over the city.

دعنا نصعد إلى مئذنة باب زويلة يوم الخميس. إنه صعب، لكن المنظر من الأعلى جميل. إذا ذهبنا فى وقت الظهيرة متأخرًا ، يمكننا أن نشاهد الغروب فوق المدينة.

Basel



Cool. And in the morning, we can explore the Souks! They're near the Minaret.

رائع. ويمكننا استكشاف الأسواق فى الصباح. إنها قريبة من المئذنة.



Samer

Great! Cairo here we come!

عظيم ! القاهرة، إننا قادمون!

Language Notes

Making suggestions: | **تقديم الاقتراحات:**

Why don't we +. + (inf.) مصدر الفعل ...?

e.g. Why don't we try new places? | لماذا لا نجرب أماكن جديدة؟

Let's + (inf.) مصدر الفعل ...

e.g. Let's go to the museum on Monday! | هيا بنا نذهب إلى المتحف يوم الإثنين!

للرد على الاقتراح يمكن استخدام عبارات مثل:

Good idea! / Okay, cool! / That sounds amazing. /Great!



Lesson 1



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and complete:

1 Reem wants to visit the Manial Palace .... on Monday.

2 They will ride on a .... on Tuesday.

3 They can go quad .... in the desert in Giza.

2 Read and match (A) with (B):

A

1 Let's climb the Bab Zuweila minaret.

2 Let's go to the theme park ...

3 Why don't we ...

4 If we take the bus, ...

B

a. ( ) and ride on a rollercoaster!

b. ( ) we will arrive in 30 minutes.

c. ( ) B: That sounds amazing.

d. ( ) The view from the top is beautiful.

e. ( ) try new places?

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

Ali will spend his summer vacation in Cairo with his cousin Amir. They think about trying some new places. They want to visit the Manial Palace Museum on Saturday. They will take photos for their school project. Ali wants to visit Cairo Tower on Monday. Amir wants to climb the Bab Zuweila minaret on Tuesday. They want to explore the souks on Wednesday. They want to ride on a rollercoaster in a theme park in Giza on Thursday. If they take the bus there, they will arrive in about 30 minutes. Ali will return home on Friday.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The underlined word "vacation" means ....

a) project b) holiday c) medicine d) place

2 Ali's vacation will be for .... days.

a) two b) six c) seven d) ten

B Answer the following questions:

3 What does Amir want to do on Tuesday?

....

4 Summarize the main idea of the text in two sentences.

....

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1 Monday – What – we – can – do – on?

....

2 can – explore – in – We – the morning – the – souks!

....

3 don't – Why – try – new – we – places?

....

4 visit – We – the – Manial – first – can – Museum – Palace.

....

5 Punctuate the following:

we can go squad biking in giza.

....

6 Write a paragraph of about 50-60 words using the following guiding elements:

مجاب عنه آخر الكتاب

"My summer vacation"

– Where do you want to go?
– What places do you want to try?

....

....

....

....



Lesson 2



If we book the tour today, it's cheaper.
إذا حجزنا الجولة اليوم، فستكون أرخص



Listen and say: استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

discount	خصم	company	شركة
adventures	مغامرات	guide	مرشد سياحى
bank details	تفاصيل بنكية	button	زر
credit card	بطاقة ائتمان	dust	غبار
free (adj.)/(adv.)	مجانى/مجانيًّا	freezer	المجمد (الفريزر)
properly	بطريقة ملائمة	dictionary	قاموس
social media	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمـة

Present		Past	Present		Past
decide	يقرر	decided	last	يدوم	lasted
book	يحجز	booked	suggest	يقترح	suggested
press	يضغط	pressed	heat	يسخن	heated
melt	يذوب	melted	study	يدرس	studied
try	يحاول	tried	block	يحجب / يمنع	blocked
die	يموت	died			

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
meet	يقابل	met	feel	يشعر	felt
mean	يقصد	meant	tell	يخبر	told

Expressions and Phrases

is called	يدعى	be in a group of	يكون فى مجموعة
get better	يتحسن	turn on	يشغل جهازًا
stay safe	يبقى بأمان	look up	يبحث عن كلمة فى القاموس
turn (the music) down	يخفض صوت الموسيقى		



Language Focus

If/When (Zero Conditional)

We use clauses with "if/when" plus present tense verbs, or a modal verb like "can" to talk about facts or things that are usually true.

نستخدم العبارات مع «if/when» مع المضارع أو الأفعال الناقصة مثل «can» للتحدث عن الحقائق أو الأشياء التى عادة ما تكون صحيحة.

Form: التكوين

If/When + subject + present simple, → subject + present simple … .
subject + can + (inf.) … .



If we go by bus, it is quicker.

إذا ذهبنا بالأتوبيس، فسنصل أسرع.



When you go there in the late afternoon, you can watch the sunset.

عندما تذهب إلى هناك فى وقت متأخر من بعد الظهر ، يمكنك مشاهدة غروب الشمس.

The clause with "if/when" can come at the start of the sentence, or at the end. When it comes first, we separate the two clauses with a comma.

- يمكن أن تأتى العبارة المصحوبة بـ «if/when» فى بداية الجملة أو نهايتها. إذا جاءت فى بداية الجملة نستخدم (,) للفصل بين العبارتين .

e.g. If you press the button, the tablet switches off.
The tablet switches off if you press the button.

In questions, the clause with if/when usually comes at the end.

العبارات المصحوبة بـ «if/when» عادة تأتى فى نهاية السؤال.

e.g. How can we get to Giza if we miss the bus?

Check point

Choose the correct answer:

1 If you put water in the freezer, it (freezes – freeze – froze – freezing).

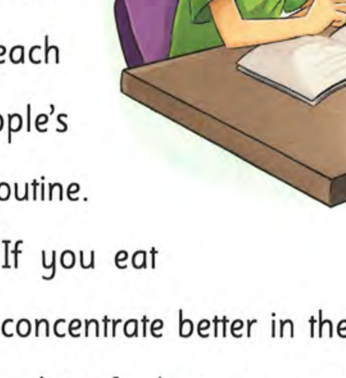
2 When you heat sugar, it (melt – melts – melting – melted).

3 I (getting – gets – got – get) a stomach ache if I eat too much cake.



Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

Study for about 30 minutes but no longer[1]. If you try to study for hours[2] without a break, you can't concentrate[3]. When you have regular breaks[4], you remember[5] more. It's also better to study at the same time each day, even on Fridays or Saturdays. People's brains[6] work better if they have a regular routine. Also, don't study when you're hungry! If you eat a healthy meal[7] at lunchtime[8], you can concentrate better in the afternoon. It's helpful if you write down[9] a list of what you want to do each time you study. Then you can check it off[10] the list when you finish studying and feel proud[11]!



ادرس لمدة ٣٠ دقيقة ولكن ليس أكثر. إذا حاولت أن تذاكر لساعات بدون فاصل ، فلن تستطيع التركيز. عندما تحصل عل فترات راحة منتظمة، تتمكن من التذكر أكثر. يفضل أيضًا أن تذاكر فى نفس الوقت كل يوم حتى فى أيام الجمعة والسبت. تعمل عقول البشر بشكل أفضل إذا كان لديها روتين يومى منتظم. أيضًا ، لا تذاكر وأنت جائع! إذا كنت تأكل وجبة صحية فى وقت الغداء، يمكنك التركيز بشكل أفضل فى فترة ما بعد الظهر. من المفيد أن تكتب قائمة بما تريد إنجازه فى كل مرة تذاكر فيها. ثم تقوم بالتحقق من هذه القائمة عندما تنتهى من المذاكرة لتشعر بالفخر.

(1)	ليس أكثر
(2)	لعدة ساعات
(3)	يركز
(4)	فترات راحة منتظمة
(5)	يتذكر
(6)	عقول
(7)	وجبة صحية
(8)	وقت الغداء
(9)	تدون
(10)	يتحقق منها
(11)	تشعر بالفخر

Check point

1 How long should a student study?

....

2 Why is it better to study at the same time each day?

....

Language Focus

Prepositions of time
حروف الجر الخاصة بالوقت

We use prepositions of time at, on, and in, to say when something happens.
نستخدم حروف الجر at ,on, و in للتحدث عن وقت حدوث شيء.

at

with times: مع الأوقات
at midnight   at four o'clock   at lunchtime



I have breakfast at 7 o'clock.
أتناول وجبة الإفطار الساعة السابعة.

on

with days and dates: مع الأيام والتواريخ
on Monday   on my birthday   on April 13^{th}



My birthday is on April 24^{th}.
عيد ميلادى فى الـ ٢٤ من شهر إبريل.

in

with months, seasons, and years: مع الشهور،فصول السنة والسنوات
in May   in winter   in 2004



I go to Paris in winter.
أذهب إلى باريس فى فصل الشتاء.



- We use "When" to ask about time/certain event.
نستخدم «When» للسؤال عن الوقت وعن حدث معين.

e.g. A: When do you get up?   B: I get up at six o'clock.

e.g. A: When is your birthday?   B: My birthday is on June 13^{th}.

Check point

Choose the correct answer:

1 I study science (of – at – on – in) six o'clock.

2 I go to Aswan (in – on – at – up) March.

3 My birthday is (on – in – at – to) June 7^{th}.



Lesson 2



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and complete:

1 Study for about .... minutes but no longer.

2 If you try to study for hours, you can't ....

3 It's better to study at the same .... each day.

2 Read and match (A) with (B):

A

1 Plants die ...

2 What happens when you ...

3 How can we get to Giza ...

4 I'm having a party ...

B

a. ( ) on my birthday.

b. ( ) if we miss the bus?

c. ( ) if you don't water them.

d. ( ) if you don't use the remote control.

e. ( ) block a person on social media?

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 I can't study if the music .... too loud.

a) was b) is c) are d) were

2 When do you get up .... Fridays?

a) at b) with c) on d) in

3 When you .... regular breaks, you remember more.

a) has b) had c) having d) have

4 I do my homework .... five o'clock.

a) in b) at c) on d) for

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1 study – Don't – hungry – when – are – you.

....

2 had – class – Monday – on – We – science – a.

....

3 heat – melts – If – it – sugar, – you.

....

4 buy – two T-shirts – you – free – get – one – When – you.

....

5 Punctuate the following:

noha was born on may 17th.

....

6 Write a paragraph of about 50–60 words using the following guiding elements:



"What are your top tips for studying?"

study for about 30 minutes – have regular breaks

....

....

....

....





Lesson 3





Fatima faces her fear
فاطيمة تواجه خوفها



Listen and say: استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

fear	خوف	teenage	سن المراهقة	view	منظر
heights	ارتفاعات	sunset	غروب	scared (adj.)	خائف

Extra vocabulary

typical (adj.)	عادى	monument	أثر	cousin	ابن عم / بنت عم
famous (adj.)	مشهور	dome	قبة	hill	تل
secret	سر	incredible (adj.)	لا يصدق	calmer (adj.)	أكثر هدوءًا

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمـة

Present		Past	Present		Past
face	يواجه	faced	decide	يقرر	decided
disappoint	يحبط	disappointed	reach	يصل	reached
smile	يبتسم	smiled	breathe	يتنفس	breathed
lift	يرفع	lifted	suggest	يقترح	suggested

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
say	يتكلم / يقول	said	feel	يشعر	felt

Expressions and Phrases

climb up the hill	يتسلق التل	afraid of	خائف من
That's a good idea.	إنها فكرة جيدة.	(someone's) face is white	أصبح وجهه شاحبًا
look around	ينظر حوله	feel proud	يشعر بالفخر

Tip! Pictures can help you understand what a story is about and give you extra detail. For example, the background can show you where the action happens, and the faces of the characters can tell you how they feel at that moment.

يمكن أن تساعدك الصور على فهم ما تدور حوله القصة وتعطيك تفاصيل إضافية. على سبيل المثال، يمكن أن تظهر الخلفية مكان الأحداث ويمكن أن تدل وجوه الشخصيات على إحساسهم فى تلك اللحظة.



Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

Fatima's favorite cousin Amal comes to visit her. It is Amal's first time in Aswan. She's very excited. She wants to see all the famous places.

تأتى أمل ابنة عم فاطيمة المفضلة لزيارتها. إنها الزيارة الأولى لأمل فى أسوان. هى متحمسة للغاية. تريد أن ترى جميع الأماكن المشهورة.



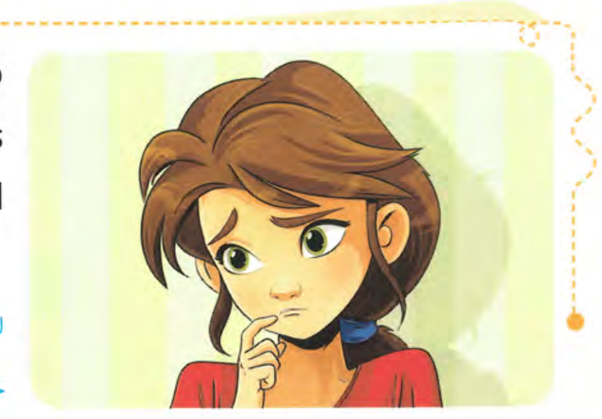
Amal shows Fatima a photo. "Can we go visit the Dome of Abu Al-Hawa? We can climb up the hill to it – there's a great view from there!"

تعرض أمل صورة على فاطيمة. «هل يمكننا الذهاب لزيارة قبة أبو الهوى؟ يمكننا تسلق التل لنصعد إليها، يوجد منظر رائع من هناك!»



Fatima doesn't know what to say. She wants to make Amal happy, but she has a secret: she is afraid of heights. How can she climb up the hill to the dome?

لا تعرف فاطيمة ماذا تقول. تريد أن تجعل أمل سعيدة. لكن لديها سر: هى خائفة من الارتفاعات. كيف تستطيع هى أن تتسلق التل لتصعد للقبة؟



Fatima doesn't want to disappoint her cousin, so she decides to face her fear. "That's a good idea," she says, "Let's go on Tuesday in the afternoon. We can watch the sunset."

لا تريد فاطيمة أن تحزن ابنة عمها، لذلك قررت أن تواجه خوفها. تقول فاطيمة «إنها فكرة جيدة». «لنذهب يوم الثلاثاء وقت الظهيرة. يمكننا أن نشاهد الغروب».



It's Tuesday and the girls are at the Dome of Abu Al-Hawa. After a long climb, they reach the top. Fatima's face is white. She is very scared. But Amal takes her hand and smiles. "Breathe slowly," she says. "You can do this, Fatima. Now look around you."

إنه الثلاثاء والفتيات عند قبة أبو الهوى. بعد صعودٍ استمر طويلًا، تمكنتا من الوصول للقمة. وجه فاطيمة شاحب، هي خائفة جدًّا. تأخذ أمل يدها وتبتسم وتقول «تنفسي ببطء». «يمكنك فعل ذلك يا فاطيمة، الآن انظري حولك».



Fatima feels calmer. She lifts her head to look at the view. It is incredible. Suddenly she doesn't feel scared any more. She feels proud to live in such a fantastic place!

تشعر فاطيمة بالارتياح . ترفع رأسها لترى المنظر. كان منظرًا جميلًا لا يصدق. لم تعد تشعر بالخوف فجأة. هي تشعر بالفخر لأنها تعيش في مكان رائع كهذا.



Check point

1 Where does Amal want to go?

....

2 Why is Fatima not sure about the visit to the Dome of Abu Al-Hawa? 

....





Listen and say: استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

deer	غزال	forest	غابة
wolf	ذئب	bear	دب
stream	مجرى مائى	fox	ثعلب

Extra vocabulary

lake	بحيرة	drink	شربة ماء
river	نهر	cool (adj.)	بارد
clear (adj.)	نقى	puddle	بركة
thirsty (adj.)	عطشان	afraid (adj.)	خائف
brave (adj.)	شجاع	delicious (adj.)	لذيذ
proud (adj.)	فخور		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمـة

Present		Past	Present		Past
stop	يتوقف	stopped	want	يريد	wanted
sparkle	يلمع	sparkled	watch	يراقب	watched

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
run	يجرى	ran	come	يأتى	came
drink	يشرب	drank	see	يرى	saw
feel	يشعر	felt			

Expressions and Phrases

run through	يجرى عبر	stop for a drink	يتوقف لأجل الشرب
the same lake as	نفس البحيرة	has a drink from	يتناول شربة ماء من
sparkle in the sun	يلمع فى الشمس		



Little Deer in the forest الغزال الصغير فى الغابة

Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

The beginning

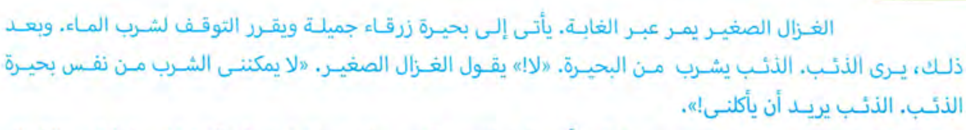
Little Deer runs through the forest[1]. He comes to a beautiful, blue lake and he decides to stop for a drink of water. Just then, he sees Wolf [2]. Wolf has a drink from the lake. "Oh no!" says Little Deer. "I can't drink from the same lake as Wolf. Wolf wants to eat me!"



Little Deer runs on through[3] the forest. Next, he comes to a river. The river is cool and clear. But as Little Deer goes to drink from it, he sees Bear. Bear has a drink from the river.

"Oh no!" says Little Deer. "I can't drink from the same river as Bear. Bear wants to eat me!"





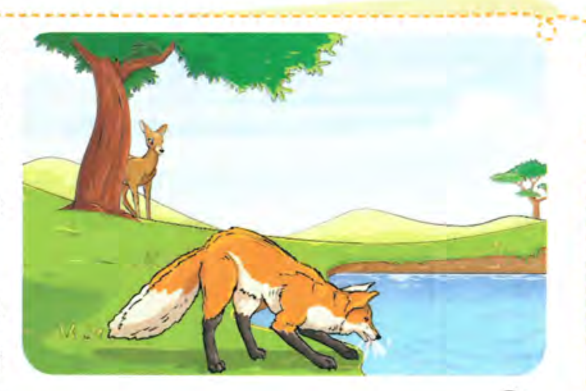
الغزال الصغير يمر عبر الغابة. يأتى إلى بحيرة زرقاء جميلة ويقرر التوقف لشرب الماء. وبعد ذلك، يرى الذئب. الذئب يشرب من البحيرة. «لا!» يقول الغزال الصغير. «لا يمكننى الشرب من نفس بحيرة الذئب. الذئب يريد أن يأكلنى!».

الغزال الصغير يمر عبر الغابة. بعد ذلك، يأتى إلى النهر. النهر بارد ومياهه نقية ولكن عندما يذهب الغزال الصغير للشرب منه، يرى الدب. يحمل الدب مشروبًا من النهر. «لا!» يقول الغزال الصغير. «لا يمكننى الشرب من نفس نهر الدب. الدب يريد أن يأكلنى!».

(1)	غابة
(2)	ذئب
(3)	يجرى خلال

The middle

Little Deer runs on through the forest. He comes to a small stream[4]. The stream sparkles[5] in the sun. "Finally!" he says. "I can have a... Oh no!" Little Deer sees Fox. "I can't drink from the same stream as Fox. Fox wants to eat me!"



Little Deer runs on through the forest. He comes to a large puddle[6]. It isn't blue like the lake. It isn't cool and clear like the river. And it doesn't sparkle like the stream. But Little Deer is very thirsty now!

الغزال الصغير يمر عبر الغابة. يأتى إلى تيار صغير. يلمع التيار فى الشمس.«أخيرًا!» يقول:«يمكننى أن أحصل على... أوه لا!» الغزال الصغير يرى الثعلب. «لا أستطيع الشرب من نفس تيار الثعلب. الثعلب يريد أن يأكلنى!».
الغزال الصغير يمر عبر الغابة. يأتى إلى بركة كبيرة. إنها ليست زرقاء مثل البحيرة. وليست باردة ونقية مثل النهر. ولا تلمع مثل التيار. لكن الغزال الصغير الآن يشعر بالعطش!

(4)	مجرى مائى
(5)	يلمع
(6)	بركة





(7)	خائف
(8)	جميل
(9)	لذيذ
(10)	فخور

Just then, Little Deer sees Little Bird. Little Bird sees Little Deer, too, but she isn't afraid [7]. Little Bird has a drink from the puddle.

Little Deer watches Little Bird. "Hmm," he thinks. "If Little Bird can be brave, I can be brave, too!"

Little Deer goes back to the beautiful [8], blue lake. He sees Wolf, Bear, and Fox. But this time, Little Deer goes to the lake and has a drink. It is delicious [9]! Little Deer feels happy and proud [10].

وبعد ذلك، يرى الغزال الصغير الطائر الصغير. الطائر الصغير يرى الغزال الصغير خائفًا، ولكنه ليس خائفًا أيضًا. الطائر الصغير يشرب من بركة.

يراقب الغزال الصغير الطائر الصغير، و يفكر، «إذا كان الطائر الصغير يمكن أن يكون شجاعًا يمكنني أن أكون شجاعًا أيضًا!».

يعود الغزال الصغير إلى البحيرة الزرقاء الجميلة. يرى الذئب والدب والثعلب. ولكن هذه المرة، يذهب الغزال الصغير إلى البحيرة ويشرب. إنه لذيذ! الغزال الصغير يشعر بالسعادة والفخر.

Check point

1 How does the river look like?

....

2 What does Little Deer think when he sees the bird?



....



Pronunciation

Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:

/w/

water مياه	wolf ذئب	window شباك	wet مبتل	whale حوت
west غرب	walk يمشى	web شبكة عنكبوت	worm دودة	
white أبيض	went ذهب	wear يرتدى	watch ساعة يد	

/v/

volcano بركان	violin كمان	vegetables خضراوات	vet طبيب بيطرى	veil حجاب
vest سترة	van شاحنة صغيرة	visit يزور	vase مزهرية (فازة)	village قرية





Lesson 3



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and write (True) or (False):

1 Little deer runs through the farm. ( )

2 Little deer sees a wolf by the lake. ( )

3 Little deer isn't afraid from the wolf. ( )

2 Read and match (A) with (B):

A

1 It's my first time in Aswan.

2 If Little Bird is brave, ...

3 Fatima has a secret.

4 Fatima lifts her head ...

B

a. ( ) She is afraid of heights.

b. ( ) stops for a drink of water.

c. ( ) I can be brave, too.

d. ( ) I'm very excited.

e. ( ) to look at the view.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

Amal comes to visit her cousin Fatima in Aswan. She wants to see all the famous places. She wants to visit the Dome of Abu Al-Hawa. There is a great view from there. Fatima has a secret. She is afraid of heights. She can't climb the hill up to dome, but she doesn't want to disappoint her cousin. She decides to face her fears and go with her. They go there and they reach the top. Fatima is scared, but Amal helps her to breathe slowly and takes her hand. She feels calmer and enjoys the incredible view.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Fatima is afraid of ....

a) snakes b) dogs c) heights d) cats

2 The underlined word "incredible" means ....

a) bad b) fantastic c) big d) calm

B Answer the following questions:

3 Where does Amal want to go?

....

4 Summarize the passage in two sentences.

....

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1 runs – Little – through – Deer – forest – the.

....

2 hill – she – How – can – climb – the?

....

3 feels – Little – and – Deer – proud – happy.

....

4 face – fear – her – Fatima – decides – to.

....

5 Punctuate the following:

she is very excited

....

6 Write a paragraph of about 50–60 words using the following guiding elements:

مجاب عنه آخر الكتاب

"Fatima's visit to the Dome of Abu Al-Hawa"

- Who goes with Fatima?
- What happens during the visit?

....

....

....

....



Lessons 4 & 5





Writing



Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

Nashwa's blog مدونة نشوى

BLOG HOME ABOUT ME LINKS ARCHIVE

Tuesday June 3rd الثلاثاء ٣ يونيو

All the fun of the Carnival[1]! وسط أجواء المرح فى الملاهى المتنقلة

Today is my birthday and guess where I am? I'm with my family for my special birthday surprise at the Carnival! I want to tell you all about it.

When you arrive at the park, you are suddenly in a world of fantasy[2], and fairy tales[3] – it's really exciting. There is a lot to see and do here. There are amazing rides[4] to try like the rollercoaster (if you're brave[5]!), and theaters[6] where you can watch shows[7]. There are places[8] to eat and stores[9], too.

The children's section[10] has nine rides, including the Orient Train[11]. We have tickets for that at 10 o'clock. My brother Hasim loves water rides, so he wants to go on some of those later this morning. At eleven thirty, we have tickets for the Waterfalls[12] rides. It has some high sections so it's a bit scary, and you get very wet!

In the afternoon, Dad and I want to go to the simulation[13] theater. You sit in your seat with big screens all around you, and there are sound and light effects. It feels like you're in different places around the world – snowy mountains, even under the ocean. It's very realistic[14] – I can't wait! What a great birthday present – thanks, Mom and Dad!

(1)	الملاهى المتنقلة
(2)	عالم خيالى
(3)	قصص خيالية
(4)	ألعاب
(5)	شجاع
(6)	مسارح
(7)	عروض
(8)	أماكن
(9)	محلات
(10)	قسم الأطفال
(11)	قطار الشرق
(12)	شلالات
(13)	المحاكاة
(14)	واقعى

اليوم عيد ميلادى، خمن أين أنا، أنا مع عائلتى من أجل مفاجأة خاصة بعيد ميلادى فى الملاهى المتنقلة. أريد أن أخبركم جميعًا عن هذا اليوم.

بمجرد وصولك للمكان ستجد نفسك داخل عالم خيالى من القصص الخيالية. إنه مكان مثير للاهتمام. يوجد العديد من الأشياء لرؤيتها وفعلها هنا. يوجد العديد من الجولات الرائعة لتجربتها مثل قطار الملاهى (إذا كنت تتحلى بالشجاعة) والمسارح حيث يمكنك مشاهدة العروض. توجد أماكن أيضًا لتناول الطعام وتوجد محلات أيضًا.

يشتمل قسم الأطفال على ٩ جولات تتضمن قطار الشرق (لدينا تذاكر لتجربته فى تمام العاشرة). يحب أخى (حازم) الجولات المائية. لذلك يود أن يذهب إلى تلك الجولات لاحقًا هذا الصباح. لدينا تذاكر للشلالات فى تمام الحادية عشرة والنصف. يوجد بها بعض الارتفاعات التى تجعل التجربة مخيفة قليلًا وتجعلك تبتل بالمياه.

نريد أنا و أبى الذهاب إلى مسرح المحاكاة حيث تجلس على مقعد محاط بشاشات كبيرة من حولك ويوجد مؤثرات صوتية وضوئية. تشعر أنك فى أماكن مختلفة حول العالم: جبال يغطيها الجليد وحتى فى قاع المحيط. تشعر كأنها حقيقية بالفعل. لا أستطيع الانتظار! يالها من هدية رائعة لعيد الميلاد. شكرًا أمى وأبى.

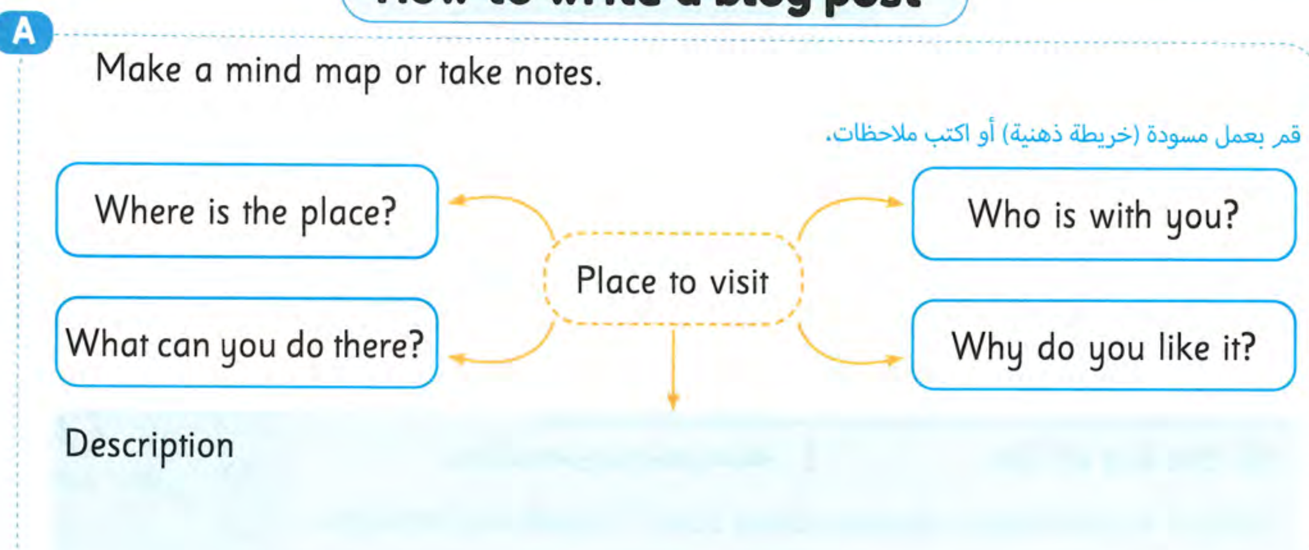


Read and notice: اقرأ ولاحظ:

How to write a blog post

A Make a mind map or take notes.

قم بعمل مسودة (خريطة ذهنية) أو اكتب ملاحظات.





B A blog post should have a title and date.

يجب أن تحتوى المدونة على عنوان وتاريخ.

C Use informal language and first-person pronouns (I, my, me). It has to include a personal story, and it usually gives the writer's opinions and feelings about his experiences.

استخدم اللغة غير الرسمية (العامية) وضمائر المتكلم العائدة عليك. يجب أن تتضمن قصة شخصية. وغالبًا يذكر فيها الكاتب آراءه ومشاعره المبنية على تجاربه.

D You can add photos to make the blog more attractive.

يمكنك إضافة صور لجعل المدونة تبدو أكثر جاذبية.

e.g. **Write a blog post of about 50-60 words using the following guiding elements:**

"My visit to the Pyramids"

Where is it? – Why do you like it?

....

....

....

....



A brochure about a vacation destination

Sharm El-Sheikh – an amazing holiday destination[1]!

شرم الشيخ - وجهة رائعة فى الإجازة.



For only LE 1000 per night, per person in a double room.

فقط بسعر ١٠٠٠ جنيه فى الليلة للشخص فى الغرفة الثنائية.

Sharm El-Sheikh is an interesting[2] and busy[3] town in Egypt by the Red Sea. There are lots of things to see and do.

شرم الشيخ هى مدينة مثيرة للاهتمام ومزدحمة فى مصر مطلة على البحر الأحمر. يوجد العديد من الأشياء لرؤيتها وفعلها.

- swim in the sea — أن تعوم فى البحر
- relax [4] at the beach — أن تسترخى على الشاطئ



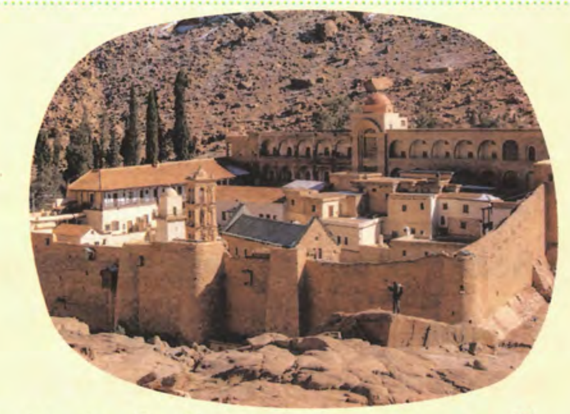
- go quad biking in the desert

أن تركب الدراجات الرباعية فى الصحراء

- eat good food

أن تتناول طعامًا لذيذًا





visit the St Catherine's monastery[5]

أن تزور دير سانت كاترين

Take *Let's Ride!* bus from Giza Square [6] every afternoon at 3pm for LE 500 only!

خذ حافلة Let's Ride من ميدان الجيزة كل ظهيرة، فقط فى مقابل ٥٠٠ جنيه مصرى.

(1)	وجهة الإجازة
(2)	مثيرة للاهتمام
(3)	مزدحمة
(4)	يسترخى
(5)	دير
(6)	ميدان



Lessons 4 & 5



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and complete:

1 Nashwa is at the .... with her family.

2 She wants to try a .... ride.

3 The children's section has nine rides including the Orient ....

2 Read and match (A) with (B):

A

1 I want to visit ...

2 Today is ...

3 You can relax ...

4 There are places to eat ...

B

a. ( ) at the beach in Sharm El-Sheikh.

b. ( ) lots of things to see and do.

c. ( ) and stores in the carnival.

d. ( ) St Catherine's monastery.

e. ( ) my birthday.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

My name is Ola. Today is my birthday. I'm with my family for my special birthday surprise at the Carnival! There is a lot to see and do here. There are amazing rides to try like the rollercoaster, and theaters where you can watch shows. In the afternoon, Dad and I want to go to the simulation theater where we can sit in our seats with big screens all around us and there are sound and light effects, and we feel like we're in different places around the world – snowy mountains, even under the ocean. It's very realistic.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The main idea of the text is about ....

a) Ola's birthday surprise at the Carnival
b) The amazing rides
c) Ola's family
d) The simulation theater

2 Dad and Ola want to go to the simulation theater in ....

a) the morning b) the evening c) the afternoon d) night

B Answer the following questions:

3 What can we do at the Carnival?

....

4 Why is the simulation theater very realistic?

....

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1 relax – You – at the – can – beach.

....

2 biking – the – Go – desert – in – quad.

....

3 wants – theater – go to – Dad – simulation – to – the.

....

4 holiday – destination – Sharm El-Sheikh – an amazing – is.

....

5 Punctuate the following:

Today is nashwa's birthday

....

6 Write a blog post of about 50–60 words using the following guiding elements:

مجاب عنه آخر الكتاب

"A day at the Carnival"

When do you go? – What can you do?

....

....

....

....

Unit 3 REVIEW

Vocabulary




explore the souks


climb the Bab Zuweila minaret


take photos for the school project


go quad biking in the desert


ride on a rollercoaster


visit the Manial Palace Museum

Language Focus



If/When

We use if/when to talk about facts or things that are usually true.

Form: التكوين

If/When + subject + present simple, → subject + present simple... .
subject + can + (inf.)... .

e.g. If we go by bus, it is quicker.

Prepositions of time

at	on	in
with times:	with days and dates:	with months, seasons and years:
at midnight	on Monday	in May
at four o'clock	on my wedding	in winter
at lunchtime	on April 13th	in 2004

Pronunciation





CHECK YOUR VOCABULARY



Lesson 1

يستكشف الأسواق	....	أماكن	....
عطلة	....	يزور متحف قصر المنيل	....
يركب دراجات رباعية فى الصحراء	....	يصعد إلى مئذنة باب زويلة	....
يلتقط صورًا لأجل مشروع مدرسى	....	مدينة الملاهى	....

Lesson 2

شركة	....	خصم	....
تفاصيل بنكية	....	مغامرات	....
بطاقة ائتمان	....	يحجز	....

Lesson 3

خوف	....	غروب	....
ارتفاعات	....	منظر	....
غزال	....	غابة	....
ثعلب	....	مجرى مائى	....
بحيرة	....	ذئب	....
شباك	....	بركان	....
كمان	....	خضراوات	....
دودة	....	مزهرية (فازة)	....

تأكد من حفظك لكلمات الدروس قبل البدء فى إجابة اختبار الوحدة.

WRITING TIME



How to write a paragraph about your vacation:

- I want to visit + (المكان).
- I want to try some new places.
- I can + (فعل) on + (يوم).
- If I + (فعل مضارع) + I can + (فعل) on + (يـوم) .

I want to visit Cairo next week. I want to try some new places. I can explore the souks on Saturday. I can climb the Bab Zuweila minaret on Sunday.

I can go quad biking in the desert on Monday. I can ride on a rollercoaster on Tuesday. If I visit the Manial Palace Museum on Wednesday, I can take photos for my school project.

How to write a blog post about a place you like to visit:

- I want to visit + (المكان).
- I go with + (شخص).
- I like it because + (سبب) ...
- I can + (فعل) ...

Mona's blog

Tuesday June 3rd

I want to visit Alexandria next Monday. I go with my friends. I like Alexandria because it is quiet and has cool weather. I can swim in the sea. I can relax on the beach. I can eat fish at restaurants. I can visit Qaitbay Fort and the Alexandria Library.

How to write about a place you want to visit:

- اسم مدينة + is an interesting town in Egypt.
- There are lots of things to + فعل ... .

Luxor is an interesting town in Egypt. There are lots of things to see and do.

- explore the town	- visit tombs
- explore the souks	- get in an air balloon

لكى تتمكن من كتابة الموضوعات بشكل مميز، اتبع هذه الخطوات.



STUDENT'S BOOK CORNER

1 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets:

1 If you .... (heat) sugar, it .... (melt).

2 If you .... (feel) tired, you ....(go) to bed early.

3 When the clouds .... (be) red, it .... (mean) there's dust in the sky.

4 My English always .... (get better) when I .... (study) the lessons again at home.

5 You can .... (tell) me if you .... (need) anything.

2 Put the words in order:

1 buy / two T-shirts, / you / free / get / one / When / you.

....

2 don't water / Plants / if / die / you / them.

....

3 go / want / by bus / Cairo, / to go to / If / you / you can.

....

4 eat / too much cake, / stomach ache / I / if / I get.

....

5 I / it / my umbrella / If / can / rains, / use.

....

6 sees / a bee, / my cat / tries / to catch / it / When / she.

....

3 Complete the sentences with at, in, or on:

1 We celebrate Sham El-Nessim .... spring.

2 Let's meet outside the school .... 10:30 am.

3 We had a science class .... Monday.

4 They went on a trip to the Red Sea .... July.

5 Great news! I'm having a party .... my birthday!

6 What did you do .... the weekend?

Practice More Unit 3

أسئلة إضافية مؤلفة للتدريب طبقًا لما ورد بكتاب الوزارة

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

when – February – on – at

My name is Amira. I play tennis. I practice .... Fridays and Sundays. I always play well .... I keep practicing every week. The match is on .... 3rd. I'm very excited. My friends and my family are coming to watch the match.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 .... you study hard, you pass the exams.
a) Where b) When c) Who d) How

2 I visit my grandparents .... Saturdays.
a) at b) by c) on d) in

3 I go to sleep .... nine o'clock.
a) in b) on c) for d) at

4 .... you eat too much sweets, you get a stomach ache.
a) If b) In c) Is d) By

3 Correct the underlined words:

1 When you turned off the fan, the room gets really hot. (......................................)

2 Could we go faster if we travel by bus? (......................................)

3 My friends give me presents in my birthday. (......................................)

4 I watch TV on lunchtime. (......................................)









1 Listen and write (True) or (False):

1 Amal wants to go quad biking in the desert. ( )
2 Fatima is afraid of heights. ( )
3 Fatima decides to face her fears. ( )

2 Listen and complete:

1 Sharm El-Sheikh is an interesting town in Egypt by the ....
2 You can swim in the sea or .... at the beach.
3 You can also visit St Catherine's ....

Reading

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Should we .... the souks on Tuesday?
a) ride b) explore c) take d) visit
2 Let's .... the Bab Zuweila minaret first.
a) take b) climb c) go d) come
3 If you .... water, it boils.
a) heats b) heat c) heated d) heating
4 I go to London .... winter.
a) on b) in c) of d) at

4 Read and match (A) with (B):

A
1 Study for 30 minutes ...
2 Why don't we visit ...
3 We visit our cousins ...
4 If you don't know a word, ...

B
a. ( ) the Manial Palace Museum?
b. ( ) to the simulation theater.
c. ( ) you can look it up in the dictionary.
d. ( ) but no longer.
e. ( ) in Aswan in July.

5 Read the text and answer the questions:

Sara and Laila plan to go to Cairo next week. They want to try some new places. Sara wants to visit the Manial Palace Museum on Saturday so that she can take photos for her school project. They want to go quad biking in the desert on Tuesday. They want to climb the Bab Zuweila minaret on Wednesday. It's difficult, but the view from the top is beautiful. They plan to explore the souks on Thursday. Sara suggests riding on a rollercoaster in Giza, too. There is a bus that goes to Giza on Thursday.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Sara and Laila want to try some new ....

a) places b) clothes c) foods d) games

2 There is a bus that goes to .... City on Thursday.

a) Giza b) Port Said c) Alexandria d) Cairo

B Answer the following questions:

3 What does Laila want to do on Saturday?

....

4 Summarize the text in two sentences.

....

Writing

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1 afraid – Fatima – is – of – heights.

....

2 the carnival – How – can – go – to – we?

....

3 good – eat – You – can – food – Sharm El-Sheikh – in.

....

4 things – are – lots of – Cairo – There – do – to – in.

....

7 Punctuate the following:

Let s go squad biking on monday.

....

8 Write a paragraph of about 50–60 words using the following guiding elements:

مجاب عنه آخر الكتاب

"A place you would like to visit"

- Who would like to go with you?
- Why do you like it?

....

....

....

Assess your progress ★★★★★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practice more	Solve more exams	Well done!

Theme 2 Myself and others
نفسي والآخرون







Unit 4 Celebrate good times!

احتفل بالأوقات السعيدة!

Unit Overview

Student's Book Exercises | Practice More | Answers 100% Q&A

- **By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:** ● بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون التلميذ قادرًا على أن:

- listen, read, and write about celebrations. - يستمع، يقرأ، ويكتب عن الاحتفالات.
- talk about things that are happening at or around the moment of speaking using the present continuous. - يتحدث عن الأشياء التى تحدث فى أو حول لحظة التحدث باستخدام المضارع المستمر.
- understand the meaning of words and phrases in a text. - يفهم معانى الكلمات والعبارات فى نص.
- learn to estimate volumes. - يتعلم تقدير الحجم.
- understand the difference between the sounds /ei/ and /e/. - يفهم الاختلاف بين الأصوات /ei/ و /e/.
- write a formal invitation. - يكتب دعوة رسمية.
- research and make a poster about a celebration. - يبحث ويصمم ملصقًا عن احتفال.

Did you know?

- In China, people eat *noodles on their birthday. The noodles are very long to *represent a long life for the person.

I can find it out!

- The Ancient Egyptians didn't celebrate everyone's birthday. They celebrated the birthdays of the pharaohs. They also celebrated the pharaoh's *coronation day.

*noodles	شعرية	*represent	تمثل / تعبر عن	*coronation	تتويج



Lesson 1



Can you blow up some balloons?
هل يمكنك نفخ بعض البالونات؟



Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:

Main vocabulary



decorate the birthday cake
يزين كعكة عيد الميلاد



blow up the balloons
ينفخ البالونات

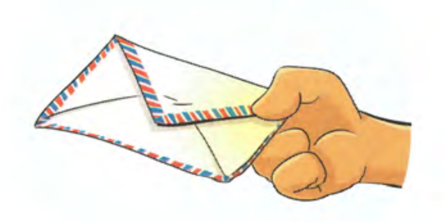


let off the fireworks
يطلق الألعاب النارية



hang up the streamers
يعلق الشرائط

make a playlist
يعد قائمة تشغيل الأغاني



send the invitations
يرسل الدعوات

Extra vocabulary

cousin	ابن العم أو الخال	scissors	مقص
string	خيط	candles	شموع
adult	شخص بالغ	yard	حديقة منزل (فناء)
event	حدث		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs		أفعـــال منتظمـة	
Present	**Past**	**Present**	**Past**
pass يمرر	passed	tie يربط	tied
decorate يزين	decorated	finish ينهي	finished
Irregular verbs		**أفعال غير منتظمة**	
Present	**Past**	**Present**	**Past**
hang up يعلق	hung up	blow up ينفخ	blew up
send يرسل	sent	write يكتب	wrote
mean يقصد	meant	have/has to يجب أن	had to
choose يختار	chose	let off يطلق	let off

Expressions and Phrases

Good idea. فكرة رائعة.	I'm not sure yet. لست متأكدًا بعد.
RSVP من فضلك، أرسل ردًّا.	let me know أخبروني
really great رائع حقًّا	get dark يظلم

Vocabulary Check

- يتغير معنى بعض الأفعال عند إضافة حرف جر ويصبح اسمها (phrasal verb).

e.g. blow up ينفخ - hang up يعلق - let off يطلق

- يتغير الفعل (tie) عند إضافة الـ (ing):

tie + ing = tying

- (RSVP) هي اختصار للمصطلح الفرنسي (Répondez s'il vous plait) ويعني (من فضلك، أرسل ردًّا).

Check point

Choose the correct answer:

1. For the party, I made a/an (cake – playlist – firework – invitation) of the best 20 songs nowadays.
2. Mom likes to (let off – blow up – decorate – hang up) my birthday cake every year.
3. I helped my brother blow up the (streamers – balloons – fireworks – invitations) for the party.
4. They let off the (invitations – cake – playlist – fireworks) into the sky for celebration.





Listen, read, and role-play: استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:



Hani

Hi Youssef, what are you doing?

مرحبًا يوسف، ماذا تفعل؟



Youssef

Hi, Hani. I'm hanging up the streamers for my sister Nesma's party. Can you help me?

مرحبًا هانى، أنا أعلق الشرائط من أجل حفل أختى نسمة. هل بإمكانك مساعدتى؟



Hani

Sure. What can I do, cousin?

بالتأكيد. ماذا يمكننى أن أفعل يا ابن العم؟





Youssef

Will you pass me the scissors, please? I'm tying the streamers together and I need to cut the string. Can you also blow up some balloons? We need to hang those up, too.

هل تمرر لى المقص من فضلك؟ أنا أربط الشرائط معًا وأحتاج إلى أن أقطع الخيط. هل يمكنك نفخ بعض البالونات؟ نحتاج إلى أن نعلقها أيضًا.



Hani

Of course! What are your other sisters doing? Are they helping?

بالطبع! ماذا تفعل أخواتك الأخريات؟ هل يساعدن؟





Youssef



Dalida and Noha? Yes, they are. They're decorating the birthday cake. They have candles for it, too. Oh, there's Amina. Amina! Are you sending the invitations?

داليدا ونهى؟ نعم. إنهما تزينان كعكة (تورتة) عيد الميلاد. لديهما شموع من أجل الكعك أيضًا. أوه، ها هى أمينة. أمينة! هل تقومين بإرسال الدعوات؟

Amina

Hi Youssef. Yes, I am. But I'm sending everyone email invitations.

مرحبًا يوسف. نعم. لكنى أرسل دعوات بالبريد الإلكترونى للجميع.

Youssef



Good idea. How many people are coming?

فكرة رائعة. كم عدد الناس القادمين؟



Amina

I'm not sure yet, but I wrote "RSVP" on the invitations. That means everyone has to let me know if they're coming.

لست متأكدة بعد، لكنى كتبت «من فضلك، أرسل ردًّا» على الدعوات. هذا يعنى أنه يجب على الجميع إخبارى إذا كانوا قادمين.



Hani



Who's choosing the music?

من يقوم باختيار الموسيقى؟



Amina

Dalida is going to make a playlist on her phone. She made one for my party and it was really great.

ستقوم داليدا بإعداد قائمة تشغيل أغانى على هاتفها. لقد أعدت واحدة لحفلتى وكانت رائعة حقًّا.





That's right. It was really good. We can ask her to make it after she finishes the cake.

هذا صحيح. كانت جيدة حقًّا. يمكننا أن نطلب منها أن تعدها بعد أن تنتهى من الكعكة (التورتة).



Amina

And we need to find an adult to let off the fireworks in the yard when it gets dark.

ونحتاج إلى إيجاد شخص بالغ ليطلق الألعاب النارية فى حديقة المنزل عندما يحل الظلام.

Youssef



Yes, Nesma loves them. I know, I'll ask my dad to do it.

نعم، نسمة تحبهم. أعرف، سأطلب من والدى أن يفعل ذلك.





Lesson 1



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and complete:

1 Mazen is .... up the balloons.

2 Eman is sending email .... to our friends.

3 Mai is making the .... on her phone.

2 Read and match (A) with (B):

A

1 Noha is decorating the birthday cake.

2 A: Who's choosing the music?

3 "RSVP" means that everyone has to ...

4 We can let off the fireworks ...

B

a. (   ) B: Dalida is going to make the playlist.

b. (   ) let me know if they're coming.

c. (   ) when it gets dark.

d. (   ) She has candles for it too.

e. (   ) the balloons.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

I'm Ali. Today is my sister Salma's birthday. We are very happy and excited. We have a lot of things to do. My brother Ramy is hanging up the streamers. He needs the scissors to cut the string. My cousin Ahmed is blowing up some balloons. My mother is decorating the birthday cake. She has candles for it, too. My sister, Noha is sending everyone email invitations. Uncle Mohamed is making a playlist. We need an adult to let off the fireworks in the yard when it gets dark. My dad can do <u>it</u>.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Noha is .... everyone email invitations.

a) decorating b) sending c) blowing d) hanging

2 The underlined pronoun "<u>it</u>" refers to ....

a) decorating the birthday cake b) hanging up the streamers

c) blowing up some balloons d) letting off the fireworks

B Answer the following questions:

3 Who is decorating the birthday cake?

....

4 What is Uncle Mohamed doing?

....

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1 for – party – my – a playlist – Dalida – made.

....

2 balloons – some – Can – blow – you – up?

....

3 you – me – the scissors, – Will – pass – please?

....

4 hanging – my – I'm – up – for – the streamers – sister.

....

5 Punctuate the following:

how many people are coming

....

6 Write a paragraph of about 50–60 words using the following guiding elements:

مجاب عنه آخر الكتاب

"My sister's birthday"

decorate the cake – send the invitations

....

....

....

....

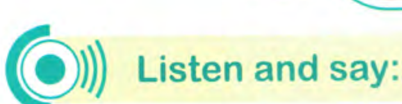


Lesson 2





I'm studying hard for my exams
أنا أدرس بجد من أجل امتحاناتى



Listen and say: استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

hard	بجد	exams	امتحانات	indoor	بالمنزل

Extra vocabulary

important (adj.)	هام	revision	مراجعة	already	بالفعل
slow (adj.)	بطيء	reader	قارئ	history	تاريخ
documentary	فيلم وثائقى	free time	وقت فراغ	music concert	حفلة موسيقية

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمـة

Present		Past	Present		Past
study	يدرس	studied	cycle	يقود دراجة	cycled
relax	يسترخى	relaxed	organize	ينظم	organized

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
spend	يقضى	spent	tell	يخبر	told

Expressions and Phrases

What's your news?	ما أخبارك؟	How are things?	كيف هى الأمور؟
at the moment	فى هذه اللحظة	don't worry	لا تقلق
get outside	يذهب إلى الخارج	do exercise	يؤدى تمارين
on the weekends	فى عطلة نهاية الأسبوع	a few times a week	بضع مرات فى الأسبوع
look forward to	يتطلع إلى	What's the weather like?	ما حال الطقس؟
take ages	يستغرق وقتًا طويلًا	get me ...	يحضر لى ...

Vocabulary Check

كلمة (DVD) هى اختصار لـ (Digital Video Disc) وتعنى قرصًا متعدد الاستخدامات.



Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

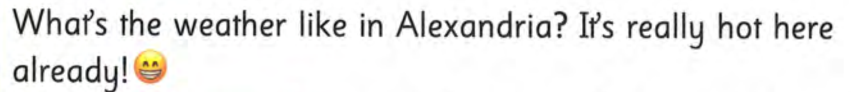
From:	ali@qwikmail.com
To:	eyad@egyptmail.com
Subject:	What's your news?



Hi Eyad,

How are things?

I'm studying hard for my exams at the moment. But don't worry, I'm not spending all my time indoors! I know it's important to get outside and do some exercise, so I'm going running every morning in the park. I'm also cycling on the weekends with my dad. I'm trying to see my friends a few times a week, too – it's good to relax and have fun sometimes, and we try not to talk about[1] how our revision is going! My friend Aser is organizing a party[2] at his house for the end of the exams, so we are all looking forward to that.



What's the weather like in Alexandria? It's really hot here already! 😁

In your last email[3], you asked me what I'm reading at the moment. I'm finishing *Everything Ancient Egypt* but it's taking ages because I'm a slow reader! I am enjoying it – I love history books – and the documentary is good, too (my mom said she will get me the DVD). What about you? What are you reading?

Write soon and tell me your news,

Ali

(1)	يتحدث عن
(2)	حفلة
(3)	بريد إلكترونى

مرحبًا إياد

كيف هى الأمور؟

أنا أدرس بجد لامتحاناتى فى الوقت الحالى. لكن لا تقلق، أنا لا أقضى كل وقتى فى المنزل! أعلم أنه من المهم الذهاب إلى الخارج وممارسة بعض التمارين، لذلك أركض كل صباح فى الحديقة. أنا أيضًا أقوم بركوب الدراجات فى عطلة نهاية الأسبوع مع والدى. أحاول رؤية أصدقائى بضع مرات فى الأسبوع أيضًا. من الجيد الاسترخاء والاستمتاع أحيانًا، ونحاول ألا نتحدث عن كيف تسرى المراجعة! ينظم صديقى آسر حفلة فى منزله فى نهاية الامتحانات، لذلك نتطلع جميعًا إلى ذلك.

كيف هو الطقس فى الإسكندرية؟ الجو حار حقًا هنا بالفعل!

فى رسالتك الإلكترونية الأخيرة، سألتنى عما أقرأه حاليًا. أنتهى الآن من كتاب «كل شىء فى مصر القديمة» ولكن الأمر يستغرق وقتًا طويلاً لأننى قارئ بطىء! أنا أستمتع به - أحب كتب التاريخ - والأفلام الوثائقية جيدة أيضًا. (قالت أمى إنها ستحضر لى DVD). ماذا عنك؟ ماذا تقرأ؟

اكتب قريبًا وأخبرنى عن أحوالك،

على



B Language Focus

The Present Continuous Tense زمن المضارع المستمر

Usage: الاستخدام

* We use the present continuous to talk about actions in progress around or near the moment of speaking, like: "this week/at the moment/today".

نستخدم المضارع المستمر للتحدث عن الأفعال الجارية حول أو بالقرب من لحظة التحدث، مثل هذا (الأسبوع، فى هذه اللحظة، واليوم).



e.g. They are organizing a party this week.

هم ينظمون حفلة هذا الأسبوع.

* We use the present continuous to talk about actions that are happening at the moment of speaking.

نستخدم المضارع المستمر للتحدث عن أفعال تحدث أثناء تحدثنا فى الوقت الحالى.



e.g. We are helping to make the birthday cake.

نحن نساعد فى صنع كعكة عيد الميلاد.

* We use the present continuous to describe things that are happening in a picture.

نستخدم المضارع المستمر لوصف أشياء تحدث فى صورة.



e.g. They are playing with the balloons.

إنهم يلعبون بالبالونات.

Form: التكوين

Affirmative sentence: الجملة المثبتة

I	am ('m)	+ (inf.) مصدر الفعل + ing ... .
He/ She/ It/ اسم مفرد	is ('s)	
We/ They/ You/ اسم جمع	are ('re)	



1 She's studying for her exams now.
إنها تدرس لامتحاناتها الآن.



2 They're playing football with the balloons.
إنهم يلعبون كرة القدم بالبالونات.

Negative sentence: الجملة المنفية

I	am not	+ (inf.) مصدر الفعل + ing ... .
He/ She/ It/ اسم مفرد	is not (isn't)	
We/ They/ You/ اسم جمع	are not (aren't)	

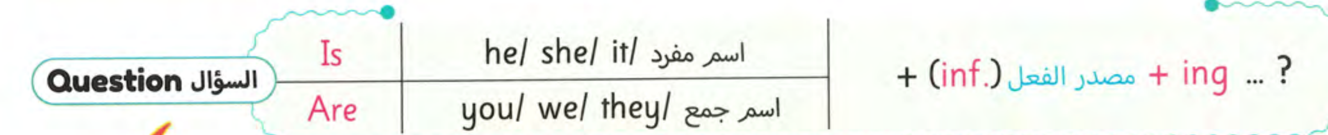


They aren't enjoying their vacation.
هم لا يستمتعون بإجازاتهم.

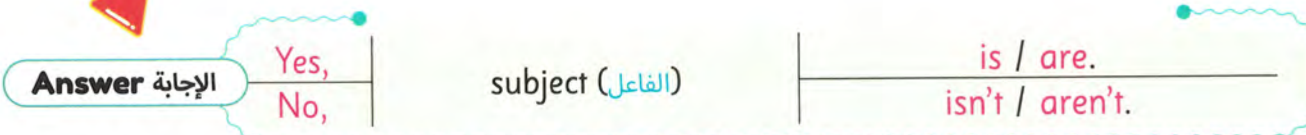


I am not playing in the basketball match today.
أنا لا ألعب في مباراة كرة السلة اليوم.

Yes/No question: السؤال بـ (هل):



Question السؤال	Is	he/ she/ it/ اسم مفرد	+ (inf.) مصدر الفعل + ing ... ?
	Are	you/ we/ they/ اسم جمع	



Answer الإجابة	Yes,	subject (الفاعل)	is / are.
	No,		isn't / aren't.



A: Is he working in France? — هل يعمل هو فى فرنسا؟

B: Yes, he is. — نعم ، يعمل فى فرنسا.

Wh- question: السؤال باستخدام كلمة الاستفهام:

Question word كلمة الاستفهام	am/ is/ are	subject (الفاعل)	+ (inf.) مصدر الفعل + ing ... ?



A: What are you doing? — ماذا تفعل؟

B: I'm reading a book. — أنا أقرأ كتابًا.

Key words: الكلمات الدالة:

this + (time)	at the moment	today	now
هذا + (وقت)	فى هذه اللحظة	اليوم	الآن

Check point

Choose the correct answer:

1 Nora (is traveling – traveling – travel – are traveling) to Alexandria this week.

2 (Is – Are – Am – Do) Kareem listening to music at the moment?

3 The boys are (played – play – playing – plays) with the balloons in the park.



Lesson 2



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and complete:

1 Ali is .... hard for his exams.

2 He is going .... every morning in the park.

3 He is cycling on the weekends with his ....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 What are Noha and Dalida .... now?

a) does b) do c) doing d) did

2 The girls .... in the park at the moment.

a) are cycling b) is cycling c) cycling d) cycle

3 .... you studying English at the moment?

a) Am b) Is c) Do d) Are

4 I .... the book now.

a) am finishing b) finish c) finished d) finishes

3 Read and match (A) with (B):

A

1 Rana is wearing ...

2 I'm studying hard for ...

3 Malak is reading a book ...

4 Salma and Maha are trying ...

B

a. ( ) to make a cake.

b. ( ) called *Everything in Ancient Egypt.*

c. ( ) baking a cake.

d. ( ) a red T-shirt.

e. ( ) my exams at the moment.

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1 is – to – anyone – not – Amina – talking.

....

2 not – I'm – indoors – spending – my time – all.

....

3 this – What – Malak – doing – are – week, – you?

....

4 my dad – cycling – weekend – I'm – this – with.

....

5 Punctuate the following:

I m reading at the moment

....

6 Write an email of about 50–60 words to your friend to tell him about your exams:



From : ....

To : ....

Subject : ....

....

....

....

....



Lesson 3





Birthdays around the world
أعياد الميلاد حول العالم



Listen and say: استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

candles	شموع	adults*	بالغون	birthday cards	بطاقات عيد الميلاد
breath	نفس	guests	ضيوف	noodles	شعرية

Extra vocabulary

countries	دول	USA	الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية	Britain	بريطانيا
South Africa	جنوب إفريقيا	Holland	هولندا	Nigeria	نيجيريا
snacks	وجبات خفيفة	India	الهند	Brazil	البرازيل
Chinese (adj.)	صيني	fire	حريق	flame	لهب

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs			أفعـال منتظمـة	
Present		Past	Present	Past
celebrate	يحتفل	celebrated	include يشتمل على	included
Irregular verbs			**أفعال غير منتظمة**	
Present		Past	Present	Past
blow out	ينفخ (يطفئ الشمع)	blew out	burn يحرق	burnt

Expressions and Phrases

all over the world	جميع أنحاء العالم	with one breath	في نفس واحد
left to burn	يُتركوا حتى يحترقوا	fully grown	ناضج تمامًا



Definitions

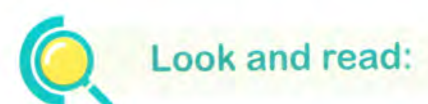
adults	الأشخاص البالغون	fully grown people, not children	أشخاص بالغون تمامًا، وليسوا أطفالًا
blow out	ينفخ	to send air through your mouth to stop a fire or flame	أن تخرج الهواء عبر فمك لإيقاف حريق أو لهب
breath	نفس	the air that comes out of your mouth	الهواء الذى يخرج من فمك
noodles	شعرية	a long, thin piece of food made from flour, water, and eggs	قطعة طويلة ورفيعة من الطعام مصنوعة من الدقيق والماء والبيض
guests	ضيوف	people you invite to your home	الأشخاص الذين تدعوهم إلى منزلك

Vocabulary Check

لاحظ الفرق بين

- (breath) وهو اسم بمعنى (نفس) وتنطق الـ(th) /θ/.
- (breathe) وهى فعل بمعنى (يتنفس) وتنطق الـ(th) /ð/.

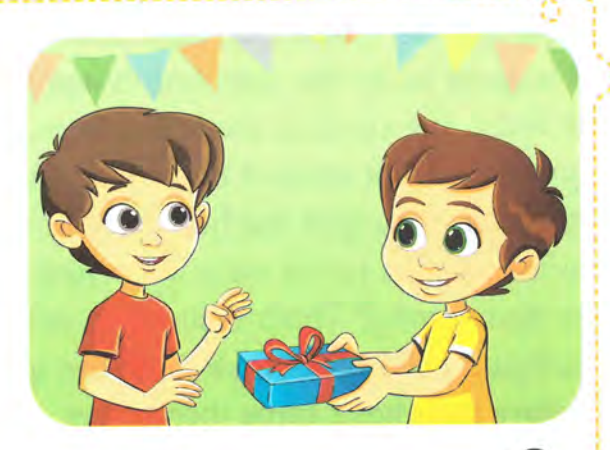




Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

Candles and cakes شموع وكعكات



Birthdays are celebrated all over the world. What do we do in Egypt? We usually make birthday cakes for our children and put candles on them to show their age. We often have parties with a lot of family and friends. The children usually get a present (1), too.



(1) هدية

يتم الاحتفال بأعياد الميلاد فى جميع أنحاء العالم. ماذا نفعل فى مصر؟ عادة ما نصنع كعكات أعياد الميلاد لأطفالنا ونضع الشموع عليها لإظهار أعمارهم. غالبًا ما تكون لدينا حفلات مع الكثير من أفراد العائلة والأصدقاء. عادة ما يحصل الأطفال على هدية أيضًا.

Birthdays are not just for children أعياد الميلاد ليست فقط للأطفال



What about (2) in other countries? In the USA and Britain, it is usual (3) to give good friends and family presents on their birthdays even when they are adults. People often give other people birthday cards too, especially (4) on important birthdays. In South Africa, 21 is an important birthday because you become an adult at this age. In Holland, children get bigger presents when they are 5, 10, 15 or 20. In Nigeria, the most important birthdays are when someone is one, 10 and 15.

(2) ماذا عن؟
(3) معتاد
(4) خصوصًا

ماذا عن البلدان الأخرى؟ من المعتاد فى الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية وبريطانيا تقديم هدايا للأصدقاء والعائلة فى أعياد ميلادهم حتى لو كانوا بالغين. غالبًا ما يعطى الأشخاص بطاقات أعياد ميلاد لأشخاص آخرين أيضًا، خاصة فى أعياد الميلاد المهمة. فى جنوب إفريقيا، عيد الميلاد رقم ٢١ هو عيد ميلاد مهم لأنك أصبحت بالغًا فى هذا العمر. فى هولندا، يحصل الأطفال على هدايا أكبر عندما يبلغون من العمر ٥ أو ١٠ أو ١٥ أو ٢٠ عامًا. فى نيجيريا، الأعياد الأكثر أهمية هى عيد الميلاد الأول وعند بلوغ سن ١٠ و ١٥.

Our birthday celebrations احتفالات أعياد ميلادنا



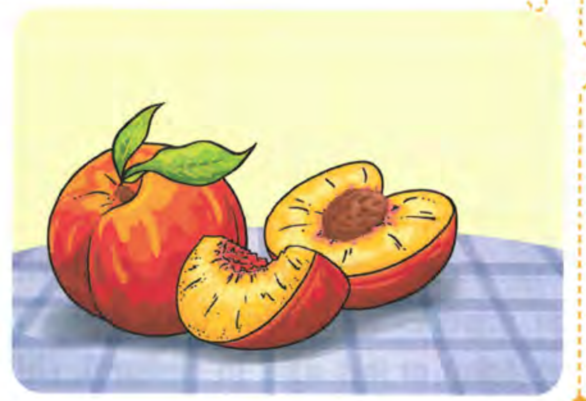
Children everywhere like party food (5). This often includes small cakes, sandwiches, and snacks. In many countries, children like to blow out the candles on their birthday cakes. It is good to do this with one breath! But in India, the candles are left to burn. Did you know that when it is a child's birthday in Brazil, they give the first piece of (6) their birthday cake to the most important people in their family? That's their mom and dad! In India too, the birthday child gives cake to all the guests at their party first, before they have some themselves.

يحب الأطفال فى كل مكان طعام الحفلات. غالبًا ما يشمل ذلك الكعك الصغير والسندويتشات والوجبات الخفيفة. فى العديد من البلدان، يحب الأطفال إطفاء الشموع فى كعكات عيد ميلادهم. من الجيد أن تفعل هذا بنفس واحد! لكن فى الهند، تُترك الشموع لتحترق. هل تعلم أنه عندما يصادف عيد ميلاد الطفل فى البرازيل، فإنهم يقدمون القطعة الأولى من كعك عيد ميلادهم إلى الأشخاص الأكثر أهمية فى أسرهم؟ أمهم وأبيهم! فى الهند أيضًا، يقدم طفل عيد الميلاد كعكًا لجميع الضيوف فى حفلتهم أولًا، قبل أن يحصل على بعض منها.

(5) طعام الحفلات

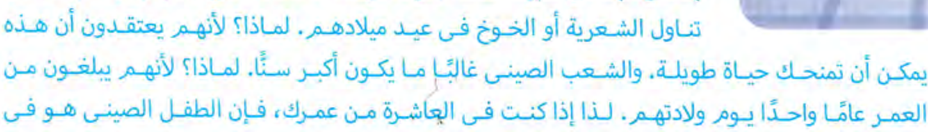
(6) قطعة من

A longer life حياة أطول



Some countries have different birthday food. In China, people like to eat long noodles or peaches on their birthday. Why? Because they think that these can give you a long life. And Chinese people are often older (7). Why? Because they become one on the day they are born. So if you are 10, a Chinese child is 11!

بعض البلدان لديها طعام عيد ميلاد مختلف. فى الصين، يحب الناس تناول الشعرية أو الخوخ فى عيد ميلادهم. لماذا؟ لأنهم يعتقدون أن هذه

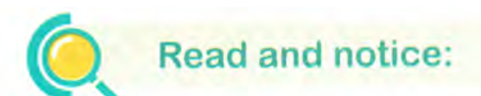

يمكن أن تمنحك حياة طويلة. والشعب الصينى غالبًا ما يكون أكبر سنًّا. لماذا؟ لأنهم يبلغون من العمر عامًا واحدًا يوم ولادتهم. لذا إذا كنت فى العاشرة من عمرك، فإن الطفل الصينى هو فى الحادية عشرة من عمره!

(7) أكبر سنًّا

Tip! To match headings to paragraphs in a text, look for key words first. What is the topic of the key words in each paragraph? Then look at the headings. Are there any words that are the same or are about the same topics?

لمطابقة العناوين بالفقرات فى النص، ابحث عن الكلمات الرئيسية أولًا، ما هو موضوع الكلمات الرئيسية فى كل فقرة؟ ثم انظر إلى العناوين. هل هناك كلمات متطابقة أو تتحدث عن نفس المواضيع؟

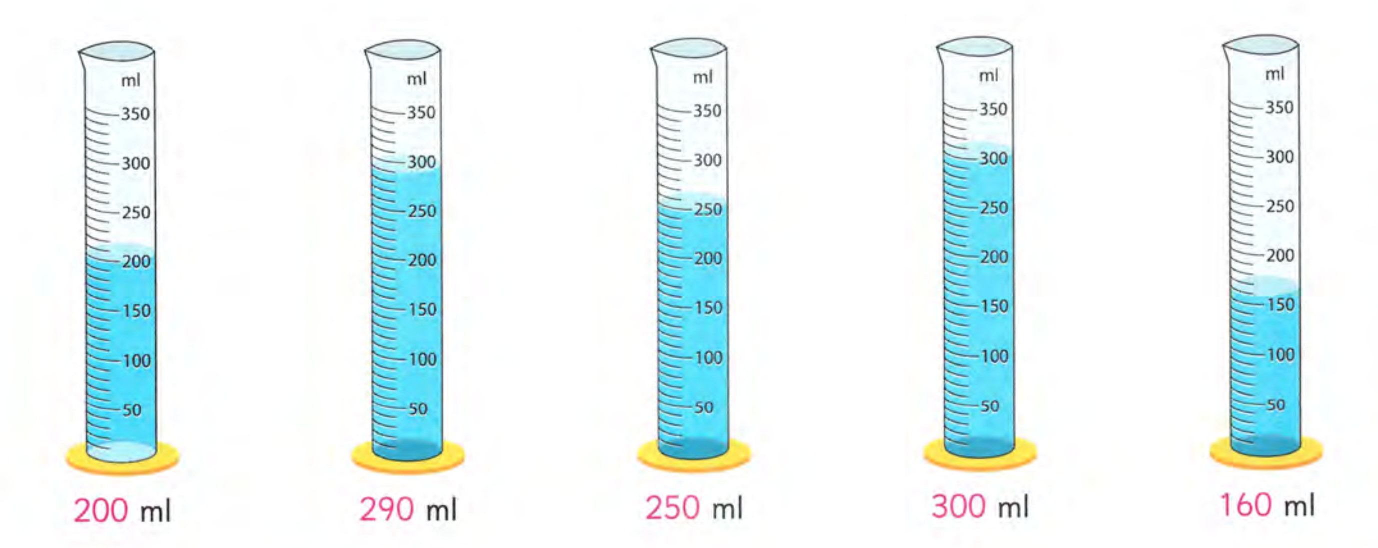




اقرأ ولاحظ:

Estimating volume تقدير الحجم

Estimate how much water is in each one. How much water is there in total?



200 ml | 290 ml | 250 ml | 300 ml | 160 ml

There's about 1200 ml of water in total.

Tip! When we talk about the amount of something, we don't always need to be exact. We can estimate, or guess, the amount. For example, if your mom asks you, "How much milk is there in the fridge?" You can say, "There's about half a liter" not, "There's 487 milliliters." We often use the word "about" when giving an estimate.

عندما نتحدث عن مقدار شيء ما لا نحتاج دائمًا إلى أن نكون دقيقين. يمكننا تقدير الكمية أو تخمينها. على سبيل المثال، إذا سألتك والدتك: «ما كمية الحليب الموجودة في الثلاجة؟» يمكنك أن تقول: «هناك حوالي نصف لتر» وليس «هناك ٤٨٧ مليلترًا.» غالبًا ما نستخدم كلمة «حوالي» عند إعطاء تقدير.



Short and long vowels أصوات الحروف المتحركة القصيرة والطويلة



استمع وقل:

/ei/	
cake	كعكة (تورتة)
train	قطار
say	يقول
bake	يخبز
pay	يدفع
stay	يبقى
wait	ينتظر
main	رئيسى
shade	ظل
sail	يبحر
pain	ألم
plate	طبق
tasty	لذيذ

/e/	
bed	سرير
head	رأس
shed	كوخ
bread	خبز
get	يحصل على
ledge	الحافة
said	قال
men	رجال
sell	يبيع
pen	قلم جاف
let	يدع
desk	مكتب



Lesson 3



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and complete:

1 In China, people like to eat long .... or peaches on their birthday.

2 Chinese people are often ....

3 Chinese people become .... on the day they are born.

2 Read and match (A) with (B):

A

1 We put candles on birthday cakes ...

2 "Adults" are ....

3 "Noodles" means ...

4 21 is an important birthday ...

B

a. ( ) people you invite to your home.

b. ( ) because you become an adult at this age.

c. ( ) to show the children's age.

d. ( ) a long, thin piece of food made from flour, water, and eggs.

e. ( ) fully grown people, not children.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

Birthday <u>celebrations</u> are not the same everywhere. In Egypt, we make birthday cakes for our children and put candles on them to show their age. In many countries, children like to blow out the candles on their birthday cakes. It is good to do this with one breath! But in India, the candles are left to burn. Children everywhere like party food. This often includes small cakes, sandwiches, and snacks. In Brazil, they give the first piece of their birthday cake to the most important people in their family: their mom and dad!

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The underlined word "<u>celebrations</u>" means ....

a) games b) parties c) candles d) travels

2 In ...., the candles are left to burn.

a) Brazil b) India c) Egypt d) USA

Tip! We use formal language when we speak or write to people we don't know very well. We use polite language and correct spelling and grammar in formal writing.

نستخدم لغة رسمية عندما نتحدث أو نكتب إلى أشخاص لا نعرفهم جيدًا. نستخدم لغة مهذبة وقواعد إملاء وقواعد لغوية صحيحة. في الكتابة الرسمية.

Informal language لغة غير رسمية	Formal language لغة رسمية
1 Bye for now, وداعا الآن،	1 Sincerely, تفضلوا بقبول فائق الاحترام،
2 Hi, أهلًا،	2 Dear, السيد العزيز،
3 party حفلة	3 celebration احتفال
4 come to يأتي إلى	4 attend يحضر
5 say yes or no يقول نعم أو لا	5 confirm يؤكد على



How to write an invitation in a formal language
كيف تكتب دعوة بلغة رسمية

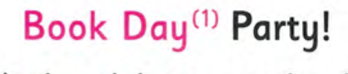
From:	عنوان البريد الإلكترونى الخاص بالمرسل
To:	اسم الشخص الذى تدعوه
Subject:	عنوان الدعوة

Opening phrase عبارة افتتاحية	• Dear,
Reason for writing: سبب الكتابة	• I am writing to invite you to...
What the celebration is for	• Mother's Day Celebration
Where it is	• School Hall
When it is (time and date)	• Date: Sunday March 21 • Time: 4:00 pm – 7:00 pm
When the person has to reply	• By February 20
A request طلب	• Please reply
Closing phrase عبارة ختامية	• Yours sincerely,





Look and read: انظر واقرأ:



Book Day[1] Party!

Let's celebrate reading!

Dress up[2] as your favorite character[3] from your favorite book.

Figure out[4] which character your friends are from the clothes they are wearing.

We have an amazing prize[5] for the best costume[6].

Come and try our drinks[7] and delicious snacks[8]!

Thursday, 2 pm, in the school hall

Family members[9] all welcome[10]!

(1)	يوم الكتاب
(2)	تنكر
(3)	شخصية
(4)	اكتشف
(5)	جائزة
(6)	زى تنكرى
(7)	مشروبات
(8)	وجبات خفيفة
(9)	أعضاء
(10)	مرحب به



حفلة يوم الكتاب!
دعونا نحتفل بالقراءة!
تنكر فى زى شخصيتك المفضلة من كتابك المفضل.
اكتشف شخصية أصدقائك من الملابس التى يرتدونها.
لدينا جائزة مذهلة لأفضل زى تنكرى.
تعال وجرب مشروباتنا ووجباتنا الخفيفة اللذيذة!
الخميس الساعة ٢ ظهرًا بقاعة المدرسة
نرحب بكل أفراد العائلة!



Lessons 4 & 5



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and complete:

1 Sara will attend the Book Day ....

2 She will go with her ....

3 They will dress up as their favorite .... from their favorite books.

2 Read and match (A) with (B):

A

1 "Sincerely" means ...

2 Please reply by August 25 to confirm ...

3 Dress up as your favorite character ...

4 We use formal language when ...

B

a. ( ) we speak or write to people we don't know very well.

b. ( ) from your favorite book.

c. ( ) we speak to close friends.

d. ( ) if you can attend the celebration.

e. ( ) "bye for now".

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

I'm Eman. I'm an English teacher. At school, we are inviting some people to attend Mother's Day Celebration this year. We are organizing a special day for the event on Sunday March 21. We love our school and our students. As well as students and teachers, we are inviting people from the local community who often help our school. Students will dress up as their favorite characters from their favorite books. We will have an amazing prize for the best costume. Some students will sing some traditional songs.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The underlined word "attend" means ....

a) celebrate b) read about c) come to d) say yes or no

2 We are .... people from the local community.

a) teaching b) speaking c) drawing d) inviting

B Answer the following questions:

3 When is the celebration?

....

4 How will the students dress up?

....

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1 attend – can – celebration – the – You.

....

2 an amazing – for – costume – We – prize – have – the best.

....

3 try – our – Come – and – snacks – delicious.

....

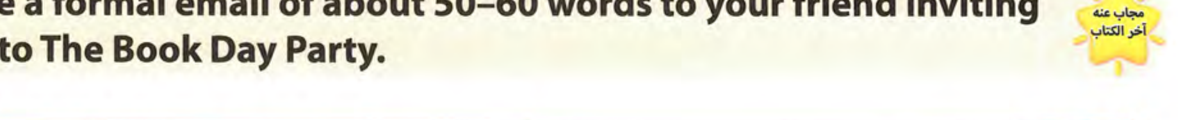
4 are – What – you – on Friday – organizing?

....

5 Punctuate the following:

let's celebrate reading

....



6 Write a formal email of about 50–60 words to your friend inviting him to The Book Day Party.

From : ....

To : ....

Subject : ....

....

....

....

....

Unit 4 REVIEW



Vocabulary



decorate the birthday cake



blow up the balloons



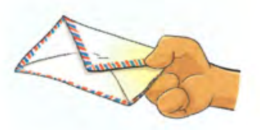
let off the fireworks



hang up the streamers



make a playlist



send the invitations

Language Focus

The Present Continuous Tense

Affirmative sentence:

I	am ('m)	+ inf. + ing ... .
He/ She/ It/ اسم مفرد	is ('s)	
We/ They/ You/ اسم جمع	are ('re)	

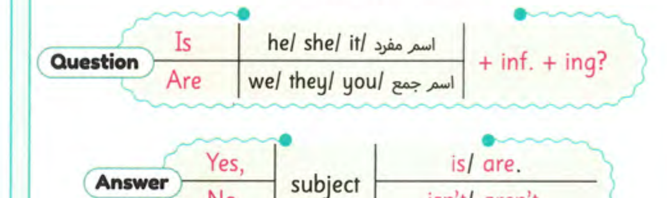
e.g. She's studying for her exams this week.

Negative sentence:

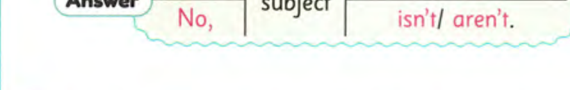
I	am not	+ inf. + ing ... .
He/ She/ It/ اسم مفرد	is not (isn't)	
We/ They/ You/ اسم جمع	are not (aren't)	

e.g. They aren't enjoying their vacation.

Yes/No questions



Question	Is	he/ she/ it/ اسم مفرد	+ inf. + ing?
	Are	we/ they/ you/ اسم جمع	



Answer	Yes,	subject	is/ are.
	No,		isn't/ aren't.

e.g. A: Is he working in France? B: Yes, he is.

Wh- question

Question word	am/ is/ are	subject	+ inf. + ing?

e.g. A: What are you doing? B: I'm reading a book.

Pronunciation

/ei/	
cake	wait
train	shade
say	sail
bake	pain
pay	plate
stay	tasty
main	

/e/	
bed	said
head	sell
shed	men
bread	pen
get	let
ledge	desk





Lesson 1

ابن العم / الخال	....	يزين كعكة عيد الميلاد	....
خيط	....	ينفخ البالونات	....
مقص	....	يطلق الألعاب النارية	....
شموع	....	يعلق الشرائط	....
شخص ناضج	....	يعد قائمة تشغيل أغانى	....
حدث	....	يرسل الدعوات	....

Lesson 2

بجد	....	امتحانات	....
بالمنزل	....	هام	....
مراجعة	....	بالفعل	....
تاريخ	....	فيلم وثائقى	....
وقت فراغ	....	قارئ	....

Lesson 3

بطاقات عيد الميلاد	....	شموع	....
شعرية	....	ضيوف	....
دول	....	العمر (السن)	....
بريطانيا	....	الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية	....
هولندا	....	جنوب إفريقيا	....
وجبات خفيفة	....	نيجيريا	....
البرازيل	....	الهند	....
صينى	....	بالغون	....
لهب	....	حريق	....
تقاليد	....	حرارة	....

تأكد من حفظك لكلمات الدروس قبل البدء فى إجابة اختبار الوحدة.

WRITING TIME



How to write about birthday preparations:

- Today is + اسم شخص + birthday.
- Singular subject + is + نشاط
- Plural subject + are + نشاط
- A lot of people are coming today. It's going to be fun.

Today is my sister Hana's birthday. Mom is decorating the birthday cake. My brother and I are hanging up the streamers. My cousin Adel is blowing up the balloons. Dad is sending the invitations. He is making a playlist for the party, too. A lot of people are coming today. It's going to be fun.

How to write about a birthday celebration in a country:

- In (اسم البلد), it is (عادات البلد) ....
- In (اسم بلد أخرى), it is (عادات البلد) ....
- In (اسم البلد), it is (عادات البلد) ....

In the USA and Britain, it is usual to give good friends and family presents on their birthdays even when they are adults. In South Africa, 21 is an important birthday because you become an adult at this age. In Holland, children get bigger presents when they are 5, 10, 15 or 20. In Nigeria, the most important birthdays are when someone is one, 10, and 15.

How to write a formal invitation email:

- Dear+ اسم الشخص المدعو
- I am writing to invite you to + سبب الدعوة
- Date + كتابة تاريخ المناسبة
- Time + كتابة وقت المناسبة
- Location + مكان المناسبة
- Please reply by + وقت to confirm if you can attend the + مناسبة

From	: nadia@gmail.com
To	: nahla@gmail.com
Subject	: Wedding Party

Dear Mrs. Nahla,
I am writing to invite you to my sister's wedding party. We are organizing a special day for this event on Monday, October 17th. Family members and friends will be there.
Date : Monday, October 17th
Time : 6:00 to 9:00 pm
Location: Jewel garden, city center.
Please reply by September 5 to confirm if you can attend the wedding party.

لكي تتمكن من كتابة الموضوعات بشكل مميز، اتبع هذه الخطوات.

Test Yourself 30

UNIT 4





1 Listen and write (True) or (False):

1 In the USA and Britain, it is usual to give adults presents. (   )
2 In South Africa, 15 is an important birthday. (   )
3 In China, the most important birthdays are one, 10 and 15. (   )

2 Listen and complete:

1 Today is Noha's ....
2 Dalia is hanging up the ....
3 Mom is .... the birthday cake.

Reading

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 What are you .... at the moment, Ola?
a) do b) does c) doing d) did
2 Mona .... time walking in the park today.
a) spend b) spends c) is spending d) spending
3 ".................................... " are people you invite to your home.
a) Adults b) Chinese c) Guests d) Children
4 We need an adult to let off the ....
a) balloons b) cakes c) fireworks d) streamers

4 Read and match (A) with (B):

A

1 Dalia is making a playlist ...
2 "Blow out" means ...
3 "Celebration" gives the same meaning ....
4 It's important to get outside ...

B

a. (   ) as "party".
b. (   ) history books.
c. (   ) for the party on her phone.
d. (   ) and do some exercise, too.
e. (   ) to send air through your mouth.

5 Read the text and answer the questions:

My name is Eyad. I'm in grade six. I'm studying hard for my exams, but I'm not spending all my time indoors. I know it's important to get outside and do some exercise. I'm going running every morning in the park. I'm also cycling on the weekends with my dad. I'm trying to see my friends a few times a week, too.

It's good to relax and have fun sometimes, and we try not to talk about how our revision is going! My friend Adam is organizing a party at his house for the end of the exams, so we are all looking forward to that.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The underlined word "cycling" means ....

a) ride a bike b) go by car c) go by train d) go running

2 Eyad is trying to see his friends ....

a) once a day b) twice a year

c) once a month d) a few times a week

B Answer the following questions:

3 How does Eyad spend his time outside? ....

4 What is Adam doing? ....

Writing

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1 in the – He's – at the – running – park – moment.

....

2 birthday – Are – the – you – decorating – cake?

....

3 for – Birthdays – children – not – just – are.

....

4 off – Dad – letting – fireworks – is – the.

....

7 Punctuate the following:

youssef's dad is sending the invitations

....

8 Write a formal email of about 50–60 words to your friend inviting him to your birthday party.

مجاب عنه آخر الكتاب

From : ....

To : ....

Subject : ....

....

....

....

....



< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practice more	Solve more exams	Well done!

NOVEMBER MONTHLY TEST







1 Listen and write (True) or (False):

1 They're traveling to Alexandria next week. ( )
2 On Sunday, they can visit the Manial Palace Museum. ( )
3 On Wednesday, they can go quad biking in the desert in Al-Fayoum. ( )

2 Listen and complete:

1 Birthdays are .... all over the world.
2 In Egypt, we usually put .... on the cakes to show ages.
3 The children usually get ....

Reading

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 A: Are you .... English this week? B: Yes, I am.
a) study b) studying c) studies d) studied

2 My sister is blowing up the ....
a) balloons b) cakes c) streamers d) invitations

3 We watch TV .... seven o'clock.
a) at b) in c) on d) by

4 We can visit the museum first, then ....the souks.
a) climb b) go c) explore d) take

4 Read and match (A) with (B):

A	B
1 They aren't baking a ...	a. ( ) we will arrive in about 30 minutes.
2 I'm on a vacation with my family ...	b. ( ) for the school project.
3 We can take photos ...	c. ( ) chocolate cake.
4 If we take the bus, ...	d. ( ) blue and yellow seats.
	e. ( ) in Alexandria this week.

5 Read the text and answer the questions:

I'm Ahmed. Today is my brother Youssef's birthday party. I'm hanging up the streamers for the party. My friend Adam is blowing up some colorful balloons. My mother and my friend Amira are decorating the cake that my mom made for the birthday party. I'm also making a playlist of all my brother's favorite songs.

My father has some fireworks. He's going to let them off in the yard when it gets dark. We're all very excited for the party.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The main idea of the text is about a ....
a) trip to Cairo
b) day at the zoo
c) birthday party
d) playing sports

2 Adam is blowing up some colorful ....
a) cakes
b) balloons
c) presents
d) fireworks

B Answer the following questions:

3 What are mom and Amira doing? ....

4 Where are they going to let off the fireworks? ....

Writing

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1 very – I'm – about – excited – vacation – our.

....

2 sisters – My – cooking – food – some – are.

....

3 next – biking – we – Should – go – Friday – quad?

....

4 don't – water – Plants – if – die – you – them.

....

7 Punctuate the following:

if you walk to school it is faster.

....

8 Write a paragraph of about 50–60 words using the following guiding elements:

مجاب عنه آخر الكتاب

"A vacation in Cairo"

Manial Palace Museum – visit

....

....

....

....



Unit 5 Amazing journeys

رحلات رائعة

Unit Overview

Student's Book Exercises | Practice More | Answers 100% Q&A

• By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:

• بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون التلميذ قادرًا على أن:

- listen, read, research, and write about famous travelers in the past.

- يستمع، يقرأ، يبحث، ويكتب عن رحالة مشهورين فى الماضى.

- talk about things that happened in the past using common irregular verbs.

- يتحدث عن أشياء حدثت فى الماضى مستخدمًا الأفعال غير المنتظمة الشائعة.

- understand the difference between the sounds /dʒ/ and /ʒ/.

- يفهم الفرق بين صوتى الـ /dʒ/ و /ʒ/.

- understand specific details in a text.

- يفهم تفاصيل دقيقة فى النص.

- write a diary entry to express feelings and mood.

- يكتب مذكرة ليعبر عن مشاعره وحالته المزاجية.

- research and make a poster about a famous traveler.

- يقوم بعمل بحث ويصنع ملصقًا عن رحالة مشهور.

Did you know?

- The longest journey on foot was George Meegan's walk from Tierra Del Fuego in Argentina to Alaska. It was 30,608 km long and he completed it in 2,425 days between 1977 and 1983.

I can find it out!

- The *record for the longest journey by sea was set by Reid Stowe, who sailed across the ocean in a sea journey that *lasted 1152 days.

* record	رقم قياسى	* lasted	استمرت



Lesson 1



He Went By Ship
ذهب بالسفينة



Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:

Main vocabulary


go on a voyage
يذهب فى رحلة بحرية


ride a camel
يركب جملًا


travel by train
يسافر بالقطار


sail by ship
يبحر بالسفينة


take a trip
يقوم برحلة قصيرة


go on a journey
يذهب فى رحلة طويلة

Famous explorers مستكشفون مشاهير


Ibn Battuta
ابن بطوطة
1304 – 1368


Vasco da Gama
فاسكو دا جاما
1460 –1524


Marco Polo
ماركو باولو
1254 –1324

Extra vocabulary

explorer	مستكشف	travel diary	مذكرات السفر
vacation	إجازة	Croatia	كرواتيا
museum	متحف	Korcula	جزيرة كورتشيلا
travels	سفريات / رحلات	Italian (adj.)	إيطالي
the West	الغرب	century	قرن (١٠٠ عام)
experiences	خبرات/ تجارب	Venice	فينيسيا
Iran	إيران	Hormuz	مضيق هرمز
ancient (adj.)	قديم	objects	أغراض

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs			أفعـــال منتظمـة		
Present		Past	Present		Past
sail	يبحر	sailed	imagine	يتخيل	imagined
Irregular verbs			**أفعال غير منتظمة**		
Present		Past	Present		Past
get to	يصل إلى	got to	fly	يطير/ يسافر بالطائرة	flew

Expressions and Phrases

That's a good idea.	هذه فكرة جيدة.	get to	يصل إلى
far away	بعيدًا	took years	استغرقت سنوات
What an adventure!	يالها من مغامرة!	come to life	تعود للحياة

Check point

Choose the correct answer:

1 Ibn Battuta was a famous (guide – explorer – doctor – sailor).

2 She enjoyed riding the (boat – ship – camel – train) across the desert.

3 I (take – ride – sail – write) a trip every year.

4 I think they (traveled – rode – sailed – made) by train.



Listen, read, and role-play:

استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:



Rana

What are you reading, Injy?

ماذا تقرئين يا إنجى؟



Injy

Oh hi, Rana. It's my travel diary. I want to remember my family's vacation in Croatia a few years ago.

أووه، أهلًا رنا! إنها مذكرات السفر الخاصة بى. أريد أن أتذكر إجازة عائلتى فى كرواتيا منذ عدة سنوات.



Rana

That's a good idea. What was your favorite thing about the vacation?

هذه فكرة جيدة. ماذا كان أفضل شىء بالنسبة لك فى تلك الإجازة؟



Injy

I think it was visiting the Marco Polo Museum.

أعتقد أن الشىء المفضل كان زيارة متحف ماركو بولو.



Rana

Really? Where is that?

حقًّا؟ أين هو؟



Injy

It's on an island in Croatia called Korcula. We took a trip there. It's a really interesting museum all about the travels of Marco Polo.

إنه على جزيرة فى كرواتيا تدعى كورتشيلا. ذهبنا فى رحلة إلى هناك. إنه حقًّا متحف رائع عن كل سفريات ماركو بولو.



Rana

Who was Marco Polo?

من هو ماركو بولو؟



Injy

He was an Italian explorer and one of the first people from the West to visit China. He went there in the 13th century and wrote a diary about his experiences. It's called *The Travels of Marco Polo*.

هو مستكشف إيطالى وهو من أوائل الأشخاص من الغرب الذين زاروا الصين. ذهب هناك فى القرن الـ ١٣ وكتب مذكرات عن خبراته. إنها تسمى «رحلات ماركو بولو».



Rana

How did people get to China in those days? It's very far away. You couldn't just fly there, or travel by train!

كيف تمكن الناس من الوصول إلى الصين فى تلك الأيام؟ إنها بعيدة جدًّا. لا يمكنك السفر بالطائرة أو بالقطار!



Injy

It was very difficult – the journey took years! Marco Polo went on a long voyage by sea. He sailed by ship from Venice to Korcula, and then on to Iran. When he got to Hormuz, he stopped and went across the desert. He rode a camel all the way to China!

كان الأمر صعبًا جدًّا - استغرقت الرحلة سنوات! سافر ماركو بولو فى رحلة طويلة عبر البحر. أبحر بالسفينة من فينيسيا لجزيرة كورتشيلا ثم إلى إيران. عندما وصل إلى مضيق هرمز، توقف وذهب عبر الصحراء. ركب جملًا طوال الطريق إلى الصين.



Rana

Wow, what an adventure!

واو، يالها من مغامرة!



Injy

Yes, and imagine arriving in China almost 800 years ago! It was so different then. The museum had a lot of things from ancient China. It really made the story of Marco Polo come to life.

نعم، وتخيلى الوصول إلى الصين قبل ٨٠٠ عام! كان الأمر مختلفًا تمامًا وقتها. المتحف احتوى على العديد من الأشياء من الصين القديمة. لقد جعل حقًّا قصة ماركو بولو تعود للحياة.

Vocabulary Check

- كلمة travel قد تأتى كفعل أو كاسم.

e.g. Marco Polo traveled to China. (فعل)   It's my travel diary. (اسم)

- هناك فرق بين (trip – journey – voyage)
- trip إنها السفر من مكان إلى آخر، من أجل الاستمتاع أو العمل، عادة لفترة قصيرة.
- journey إنها السفر من مكان إلى آخر، عادة لفترة طويلة، عبر الجو، البحر، أو البر.
- voyage الذهاب إلى مكان، فقط عبر البحر.

_ لاحظ الفرق بين (diary) وتعنى مذكرة و (dairy) وتعنى منتجات الألبان.

_ لاحظ استخدام (by) مع وسائل المواصلات:

e.g. He sailed to China by ship.





Lesson 1



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and complete:

1 Rania has an interesting travel ....

2 They visited the Marco Polo ....

3 The museum is all about the .... of Marco Polo.

2 Read and match (A) with (B):

A

1 A: What are you reading?

2 Vasco da Gama was ...

3 Marco Polo went across the desert.

4 The museum is on an island ...

B

a. ( ) He rode a camel to China.

b. ( ) It's all about the travels of Marco Polo.

c. ( ) B: It's my travel diary.

d. ( ) called Korcula.

e. ( ) a famous explorer in the past.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

Marco Polo was an Italian explorer and one of the first people from the West to visit China. He went <u>there</u> in the 13th century and wrote a diary about his experiences. It's called "*The Travels of Marco Polo*". Marco Polo's journey to China was very difficult. The journey took years! Marco Polo went on a long voyage by sea. He sailed by ship from Venice to Korcula, and then on to Iran. When he got to Hormuz, he stopped and went across the desert. He rode a camel all the way to China.

A Choose the correct word from a, b, c, or d:

1 A "voyage" is a trip across the ....

a) forest b) desert c) sea d) land

2 The underlined word "<u>there</u>" refers to ....

a) Venice b) China c) Korcula d) Iran

B **Answer the following questions:**

3 When did Marco Polo visit China?

....

4 How was Marco Polo's journey to China?

....

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1 Injy – What – reading, – are – you?

....

2 took – The – years – China – to – journey.

....

3 is – The museum – called – on – Korcula – an island.

....

4 an – Marco – Italian – Polo – was – explorer.

....

5 Punctuate the following:

How did people get to china those days

....

6 Write a paragraph of about 50–60 words using the following guiding elements:

مجاب عنه آخر الكتاب

"Marco Polo"

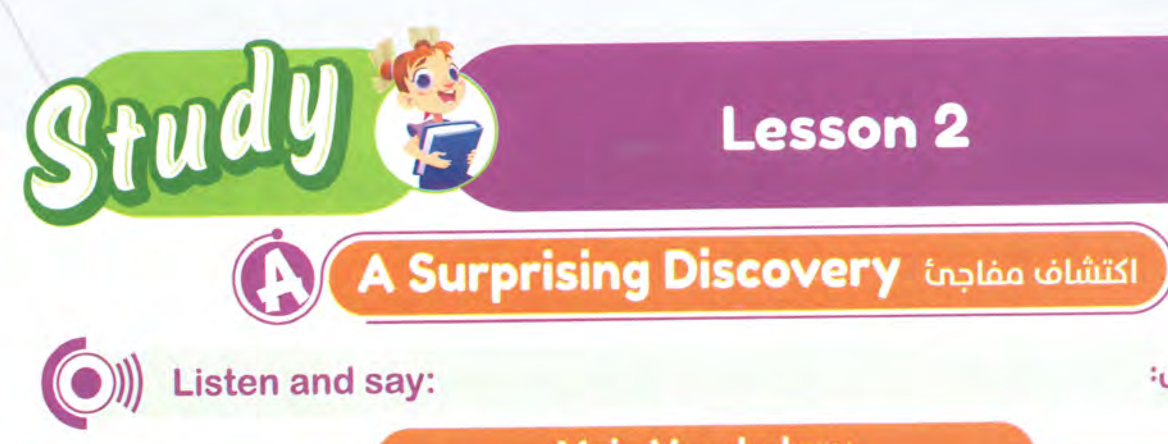
Italian explorer – wrote a diary

....

....

....

....







A Surprising Discovery اكتشاف مفاجئ



Listen and say: استمع وقل:

Main Vocabulary

discovery	اكتشاف	clay	طين	archaeologists	علماء الآثار
tools	أدوات	advanced (adj.)	متطور	inspiration	إلهام

Extra Vocabulary

surprising (adj.)	مفاجئ	Nok	قرية نوك	Nigeria	نيجيريا
West Africa	غرب إفريقيا	unusual (adj.)	غير عادى	sculptures	منحوتات
style	طراز	complicated (adj.)	معقد	quality	جودة
incredible (adj.)	مذهل	farming tools	أدوات زراعية	stone	حجر
iron	حديد	culture	ثقافة	BCE	قبل الميلاد
CE	الحقبة الميلادية	civilization	حضارة	ability	قدرة
Ife people	شعب «الإيف»	century	قرن (١٠٠ عام)	mystery	سر غامض / لغز

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمـة

Present		Past	Present		Past
agree	يوافق	agreed	believe	يعتقد	believed

Expressions and Phrases

in a sitting position	فى وضعية الجلوس	find out more	يكتشف المزيد
an area of hundreds of kilometers	منطقة على مساحة مئات الكيلومترات	call ... after	يسمى على اسم

Definitions

clay	a type of earth that is sticky when wet	نوع من الأرض يكون لزجًا حينما يكون مبتلًا
inspiration	an example others use to help create new ideas	مثال يساعد الآخرين على خلق أفكار جديدة
tools	objects we use to make or do things	أغراض نستخدمها لصنع أو عمل أشياء
sculptures	art made from stone or wood	فن مصنوع من الحجارة أو الخشب
advanced	modern or well developed	حديث أو مطور جيدًا
archaeologist	a person who studies very old objects that they find under the ground	الشخص الذى يقوم بدراسة أشياء قديمة جدًّا وجدها أسفل الأرض
mystery	something that people can not understand or explain	شيء لا يستطيع الناس فهمه أو تفسيره



Look and read: انظر واقرأ:



Almost 100 years ago, local people (1) in the small village (2) of Nok in Nigeria, a country in West Africa, found some unusual objects under the ground. These objects were beautiful clay sculptures of humans.The sculptures were all in the same style: they had large eyes and complicated hair styles. They were usually in a sitting position with their hands on their legs. The quality of the work was incredible.

قبل ما يقرب من ١٠٠ عام، عثر السكان المحليون فى قرية نوك الصغيرة فى نيجيريا، وهى دولة تقع فى غرب إفريقيا، على بعض الأشياء غير العادية تحت الأرض. كانت هذه القطع الفنية منحوتات طينية جميلة على هيئة أشكال بشرية. كانت المنحوتات جميعها بنفس النمط: كان لديهم عيون كبيرة وأنماط شعر معقدة. وعادة ما كانوا فى وضع الجلوس مع وضع أيديهم على أرجلهم. كانت جودة العمل مذهلة.

(1)	السكان المحليون
(2)	قرية

A team of archaeologists went to the area to find out more. They found many similar (3) sculptures in an area of hundreds of kilometers around Nok. There were also iron and stone farming tools. The archaeologists agreed these were most likely from a very advanced culture from around (4) 500 BCE to 200 CE. It was a civilization which had the ability to work iron and stone to make tools, and which made beautiful art (5).

توجه فريق من علماء الآثار إلى المنطقة لاكتشاف المزيد. وجدوا العديد من المنحوتات المماثلة فى منطقة تبلغ مئات الكيلومترات حول نوك. كانت هناك أيضًا أدوات زراعة من الحديد والحجارة. وقد اتفق علماء الآثار على أن هذه كانت من ثقافة متقدمة جدًا من حوالى ٥٠٠ سنة قبل الميلاد إلى ٢٠٠ سنة ميلادية. كانت تلك الحضارة لديها القدرة على العمل بالحديد والحجر لصنع الأدوات، والتى جعلت الفن جميلًا.

(3)	متشابه
(4)	حوالى
(5)	فن

السابق	(6)
معلومات مكتوبة	(7)



They called this culture the "Nok" civilization, after the village where sculptures were found. Some believe that the sculptures were the inspiration for the famous works of art by the later(6) Ife people, who were in Nigeria from the 11th to the 15th century CE The Ife were famous for making beautiful metal sculptures of human heads. However, there is no written information(7) about the Nok people, so we can only learn about them from their art. Their culture is still a mystery today.

وأطلقوا على هذه الثقافة اسم «حضارة نوك» على اسم القرية التى تم العثور فيها على المنحوتات. يعتقد البعض أن المنحوتات كانت مصدر إلهام للأعمال الفنية الشهيرة لشعب «الإيف» الذين كانوا فى نيجيريا من القرن الحادى عشر إلى القرن الخامس عشر. اشتهر شعب «الإيف» بصنع منحوتات معدنية جميلة للرءوس البشرية. ومع ذلك، لا توجد معلومات مكتوبة عن النوك، لذلك لا يمكننا التعرف عليهم إلا من خلال أعمالهم الفنية؛ حيث لا تزال ثقافتهم لغزًا إلى اليوم.

Check point

SB

1 Which two cultures are mentioned?

....

2 Where did the name "Nok" come from?

....

Vocabulary Check

- لاحظ الفرق بين الصفة (surprised) وتعنى مندهشًا والصفة (surprising) وتعنى مدهشًا.

e.g. I was surprised at your present.
It was a very surprising discovery.

- لاحظ أن (discover) هى (فعل) بمعنى يكتشف، وأن (discovery) هو (اسم) بمعنى اكتشاف.
- لاحظ أن ...

(BCE) هى الوقت ما قبل العام الأول الميلادى.

(CE) هى الوقت منذ العام الأول الميلادى وما يليه.

The form of the past simple verbs is the same with all subjects, apart from "be".
لا يختلف تكوين الأفعال فى زمن الماضى البسيط مع كل الضمائر، باستثناء الفعل «be».

Verb to "be" in the past simple فعل "يكون" فى زمن الماضى البسيط

Affirmative sentence: الجملة المثبتة:

I / He / She / It / اسم مفرد + was ...

Fares was angry with his brother yesterday.
كان فارس غاضبًا من أخيه أمس.

We / They / You / اسم جمع + were ...

Nader and Walid were in my class last year.
كان نادر ووليد فى فصلى العام الماضى

Negative sentence: الجملة المنفية:

I / He / She / It / اسم مفرد + was not (wasn't) ...

The water in the sea wasn't warm.
المياه فى البحر لم تكن دافئة.

We / They / You / اسم جمع + were not (weren't) ...

We weren't at school last Friday.
لم نكن فى المدرسة الجمعة الماضية.

Yes/No question: السؤال بـ "هل":

question: السؤال

Was	I / he / she / it / اسم مفرد ...?
Were	we / they / you / اسم جمع ...?

Answer: الإجابة

Yes,	subject (فاعل)	was / were.
No,		wasn't / weren't.

A: Was she happy in New York?
B: No, she wasn't happy there.

Check point

Choose the correct answer:

1 I think she (go – goes – went – going) to her friends' apartment last week.
2 They (don't – aren't – doesn't – didn't) come to the party yesterday.
3 (Was – Were – Is – Are) they at the club last weekend?





• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and complete:

1 The works of art were beautiful clay .... of humans.

2 The sculptures had .... eyes.

3 These sculptures were in a .... position.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Hundred years ago, there .... a discovery in the village of Nok.

a) is b) did c) was d) were

2 A team of .... went to explore the area where the sculptures were.

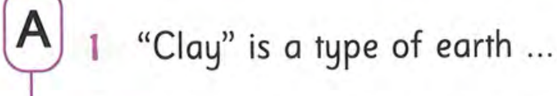
a) doctors b) actors c) archeologists d) nurses

3 "..........................." means modern or well developed.

a) Advanced b) Clay c) Tools d) Sculptures

4 My family .... on vacation last year.

a) go b) goes c) went d) going



3 Read and match (A) with (B):

A

1 "Clay" is a type of earth ...

2 The archaeologists found ...

3 "Inspiration" is an example others use ...

4 The sculptures were ...

B

a. ( ) many old farming tools.

b. ( ) to help create new ideas.

c. ( ) that is sticky when wet.

d. ( ) the village of Nok.

e. ( ) all in the same style.

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1 have – a lot – Did – homework – he – of?

....

2 of – The quality – the – incredible – work – was.

....

3 week – went – the – to – She – last – library.

....

4 stone – farming – There – tools – iron – were – and.

....

5 Punctuate the following:

the water in the sea wasn t warm.

....

6 Write a paragraph of about 50–60 words using the following guiding elements:



"Nok civilization"

Where is Nok?	in Nigeria, a country in West Africa
What did local people find?	some unusual objects under the ground

....

....

....

....



Lesson 3





A Marco Polo crosses the Desert
يعبر ماركو باولو الصحراء



Listen and say: استمع وقل:

Main Vocabulary

fascinated (adj.)	منبهر	dromedaries	جِمَال ذات سنم واحد	caravan	قافلة
wasteland	أرض قاحلة	legends	أساطير		

Extra Vocabulary

Gobi Desert	صحراء جوبي	sand dunes	كثبان رملية	step	خطوة
ocean	محيط	Lop Nur	قرية لوب نور	mysterious (adj.)	غامض
noises	ضوضاء	voices	أصوات (بشرية)	frightening (adj.)	مخيف
Noah Oasis	واحة نوح	exhausted (adj.)	مُتعَب	direction	اتجاه

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمــة

Present		Past	Present		Past
move	يتحرك	moved	change	يتغير	changed
roll	يلتف	rolled	sway	يتمايل	swayed
last	يدوم/ يستمر	lasted			

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
know	يعرف	knew	leave	يغادر	left

Expressions and Phrases

slowly up and down	ببطء لأعلى ولأسفل	over the ocean	عبر المحيط
boiling hot	شديد السخونة	freezing cold	شديد البرودة
went on	استمر	lost long ago	تائه منذ فترة طويلة
on the horizon	في الأفق	interested in	مهتم بـ

Definitions

fascinated by	very interested in	مهتم جدًّا بشيء
caravan	a group of camels and people traveling together	مجموعة من الناس والجِمَال يسافرون معًا
swaying	moving from side to side	يتحرك من جانب إلى آخر
wasteland	a landscape where nothing lives	مكان طبيعي لا يعيش فيه شيء
wandered	walked about without a direction	يمشي بلا اتجاهات محددة
legend	a very old famous story	قصة قديمة جدًّا ومشهورة

Look and read: انظر واقرأ:



Marco Polo was twenty-one when, in 1275, he went into the Gobi Desert for the first time. He was fascinated by the sand dunes, which moved with each step the camels made. Some of the dunes were sixty meters tall and twenty meters long, and their shapes were always changing. The wind made them move and roll like huge yellow waves [1]. In fact, the local people called the Gobi Desert "the dry sea" in their language [2].

كان ماركو باولو في الواحد والعشرين من عمره في عام ١٢٧٥ عندما دخل في صحراء جوبي لأول مرة. كان مفتونًا بالكثبان الرملية التي انتقلت مع كل خطوة صنعتها الجمال وحيدة السنم. وكان طول بعض الكثبان الرملية ستين مترًا وطولها أفقيًا ٢٠ مترًا، وكانت أشكالها تتغير دائمًا. الرياح جعلتهم يتحركون ويلتفون مثل الأمواج الصفراء الضخمة. في الواقع، أطلق السكان المحليون اسم «البحر الجاف» على صحراء جوبي في لغتهم الخاصة.

(1)	أمواج
(2)	لغة
(3)	فارغ
(4)	بصمت
(5)	ضوضاء
(6)	بعيدًا

The dromedaries in the caravan moved slowly up and down the dunes, swaying like big ships over the ocean. They went toward Lop Nur, the last village before the empty [3] wasteland of the desert. Marco knew that after this place, there was nothing for thousands of kilometers – no people, no plants, no water.

تحركت الجمال وحيدة السنم في القافلة ببطء إلى أعلى وأسفل الكثبان الرملية، متمايلة مثل السفن الكبيرة فوق المحيط. ذهبوا نحو (لوب نور)، القرية الأخيرة قبل أرض الصحراء الفارغة. عرف ماركو أنه بعد هذا المكان، لم يكن هناك شيء لآلاف الكيلومترات - لا أشخاص ولا نباتات ولا ماء.



It was a mysterious and dangerous place. By day, it was boiling hot, by night, it was freezing cold – sometimes there was snow. They went on silently [4], but often the wind made strange noises [5], like voices singing and drums playing far away [6]. There were many strange legends about this desert. People said that travelers who were lost long ago in the desert wandered there still ...

كان مكانًا غامضًا وخطيرًا. في النهار، كان شديد السخونة، في الليل، كان شديد البرودة - في بعض الأحيان كان هناك ثلج. استمر المستكشفون بصمت، ولكن في كثير من الأحيان كانت الرياح تصدر أصواتًا غريبة، مثل أصوات الغناء والطبول التي تُعزف بعيدًا. كانت هناك العديد من الأساطير الغريبة حول هذه الصحراء. قال الناس إن المسافرين الذين فُقدوا منذ فترة طويلة في الصحراء ما زالوا يتجولون هناك ...



Before they left Lop Nur, Marco made sure[7] they had enough food and water for the men and the animals to last for one month. After exactly[8] thirty days of traveling across that frightening, empty land, they finally saw the green line of Noah Oasis on the horizon. They had no water and no food left and the animals were exhausted, but their desert adventure was over. They were in China!

(7)	تأكد
(8)	بالضبط

قبل أن يغادروا (لوب نور)، تأكد ماركو من أن لديهم ما يكفى من الطعام والماء للرجال والحيوانات ليدوم لمدة شهر واحد. بعد ثلاثين يومًا بالضبط من السفر عبر هذه الأرض الفارغة والمخيفة، رأوا أخيرًا الخط الأخضر لواحة نوح فى الأفق. لم يكن لديهم ماء ولا بقايا طعام وكانت الحيوانات متعبة، ولكن تلك مغامرة الصحراء قد انتهت. لقد كانوا فى الصين!

Check point

1 When did Marco Polo go to the Gobi Desert?

....

2 What was the name the local people called this desert?



....





Listen and say: استمع وقل:

Main Vocabulary

mysterious (adj.)	غامض	ship	سفينة	port	ميناء
possible (adj.)	ممكن	cabin	كابينة / مقصورة	news	أخبار

Extra vocabulary

boring (adj.)	ممل	terrible (adj.)	فظيع	telescope	تليسكوب
sandy (adj.)	ملىء بالرمال	palm trees	أشجار النخيل	center	مركز
hope	أمل	light	ضوء	quite	إلى حد ما
relaxing (adj.)	مريح	captain	قائد	diary	مُذكرة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs			أفعـــال منتظمــة		
Present		Past	Present		Past
explore	يستكشف	explored	seem	يبدو	seemed

Expressions and Phrases

long walks	المشي لمسافات طويلة	pass the time	يمرر الوقت
a bit clearer	أكثر وضوحًا قليلًا	come up	تشرق

Vocabulary Check

- لاحظ الفرق بين (quiet) بمعنى هادئ و (quite) بمعنى إلى حد ما.

e.g. My teacher asked me to be quiet.

It's quite hot outside.

- لاحظ أن (sleep) قد تأتى فعل بمعنى (ينام) أو اسم بمعنى (النوم).

e.g. I had quite a relaxing sleep in my cabin last night. (noun)

She usually sleeps for 8 hours every day. (verb)



The Mysterious Island الجزيرة الغامضة

Listening Script

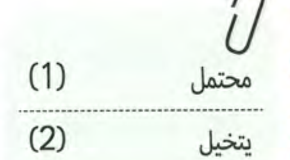


Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

The beginning

January 17

Today was a long, boring day with terrible weather. The ship didn't leave the port, so my journey to the mysterious island wasn't possible(1). I can see the island through my telescope. The beaches are white and sandy with many palm trees and there are green mountains at its center. It's exciting to imagine(2) what I could find there. I'm sure I'll travel there soon.



(1) محتمل

(2) يتخيل



١٧ يناير: كان اليوم يومًا مملًا طويلًا مع طقس رهيب. لم تغادر السفينة الميناء، لذلك لم تكن رحلتى إلى الجزيرة الغامضة ممكنة. يمكننى رؤية الجزيرة من خلال التلسكوب الخاص بى. الشواطئ بيضاء ورملية مع العديد من أشجار النخيل وهناك جبال خضراء فى وسطها. من المثير أن أتخيل ما يمكن أن أجده هناك. أنا متأكد من أننى سأسافر هناك قريبًا.

The middle

January 19

I was sad all day yesterday. The weather was still bad and there were strong winds. I went for long walks around the ship to pass the time during the day. In the evening, I had nothing to do but read my book by the light of a candle in my small cabin. Today the sky is a bit clearer – there is some hope for my journey, perhaps(3) – but time seems to move very slowly in this place.

(3) ربما



١٩ يناير: كنت حزينًا طوال اليوم أمس. كان الطقس لايزال سيئًا وكان هناك رياح قوية. ذهبت للمشى لمسافات طويلة حول السفينة لتمرير الوقت خلال اليوم. فى المساء، لم يكن لدى ما أفعله سوى قراءة كتابى على ضوء شمعة فى مقصورتى الصغيرة. اليوم السماء أكثر وضوحًا - هناك بعض الأمل فى رحلتى ربما - ولكن يبدو أن الوقت يتحرك ببطء شديد فى هذا المكان.

The end

January 21



I had quite a relaxing sleep in my cabin last night, and this morning I had breakfast with the others on the ship. In the afternoon, there was good news from the captain: tomorrow, the weather will be good with no wind, so we can go to the island in the morning. The ship will leave(4) when the sun comes up. I'm very excited: soon I can explore the mysterious island!

(4) تغادر

٢١ ينايـر: نمـت نومًا مريحًـا وهادئًـا فى مقصورتى الليلـة الماضيـة، وفى هـذا الصبـاح تناولـت وجبـة الإفطـار مـع الآخريـن على متـن السـفينة. بعـد الظهـر، كانـت هنـاك أخبـار جيـدة مـن القبطـان، حيـث يقـول إن الطقـس غـدًا سـيكون جيـدًا بـدون ريـاح، لذلـك يمكننـا الذهـاب إلـى الجزيـرة فـى الصبـاح. سـتغادر السـفينة عندمـا تشـرق الشـمس. أنـا متحمـس للغايـة: فسـرعان مـا يمكننـى استكشـاف الجزيـرة الغامضـة!



The story is a page from an 18th century writer's diary.

القصة عبارة عن صفحة من مذكرات كاتب فى القرن الثامن عشر.

Check point

1 How was the island he saw through the telescope?

....

2 What did he do on January 19?

....

3 How did the writer describe the island? 

....



Pronunciation

Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:

/dʒ/

huge
ضخم

fridge
ثلاجة

age
عمر/سن

joke
نكتة

dangerous
خطير

language
لغة

cage
قفص

bridge
كوبرى

village
قرية

damaged
محطم

Jerry
(جيرى) اسم شخص

arrange (v.)
يرتب

luggage
أمتعة

Japan
اليابان

/ʒ/

measure (v.)
يقيس

treasure
كنز

usually
عادة

leisure
وقت فراغ

Asia
آسيا

television
تلفزيون

pleasure
متعة



Lesson 3



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

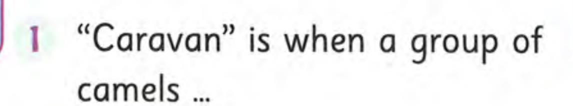
1 Listen and complete:

1 The story was a page from an 18th century writer's ....

2 The writer had a .... sleep at his cabin last night.

3 The next day, the ship left the .... to a mysterious island.

2 Read and match (A) with (B):



A

1 "Caravan" is when a group of camels ...

2 "Wasteland" is a landscape ...

3 Marco Polo was twenty one ...

4 By day, the empty wasteland was boiling hot, ...

B

a. ( ) where nothing lives.

b. ( ) by night, it was freezing cold.

c. ( ) enough water and food.

d. ( ) and people traveling together.

e. ( ) when he went to the Gobi Desert.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

Marco Polo was twenty one when, in 1275, he went into the Gobi Desert for the first time. He was fascinated by the sand dunes which moved with each step the dromedaries made. Some of the dunes were sixty meters tall and twenty meters long, and their shapes were always changing. The wind made them move and roll like huge yellow waves. In fact, the local people called the Gobi Desert "the dry sea" in their language. The dromedaries in the caravan moved slowly up and down the sand dunes.

A Choose the correct word from a, b, c, or d:

1 Local people called the Gobi Desert ....

a) the big tree b) the wet ocean

c) the dry sea d) the dark place

2 The underlined word "dromedaries" is a type of ....

a) caravans b) people c) camels d) sand dunes



B **Answer the following questions:**

3 When did Marco Polo go to the Gobi Desert?

....

4 Summarize the main idea of the passage in two sentences.

....

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1 moved – slowly – The dromedaries – in the – caravan.

....

2 leave – The ship – port – yesterday – the – didn't.

....

3 read – cabin – I – a book – in – my.

....

4 waves – Sand – dunes – were – like – yellow – huge.

....

5 Punctuate the following:

she was sad all day yesterday

....

6 Write a paragraph of about 50–60 words using the following guiding elements:

مجاب عنه آخر الكتاب

"Gobi Desert"

How does it look? – What do local people call it?

....

....

....

....



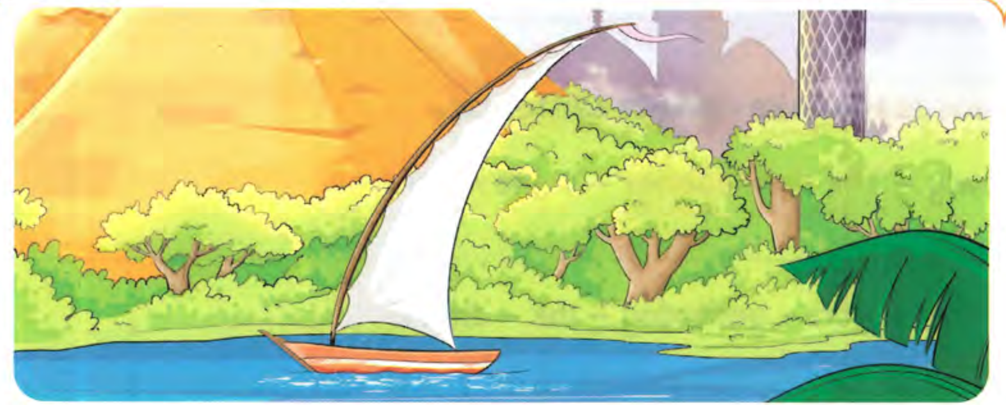
Lessons 4 & 5
Writing



A diary مذكرة شخصية



Look and read: انظر واقرأ:





6 January

Today, I had an amazing experience[1] ... I went on a *felucca* on the River Nile! A felucca is a traditional[2] Egyptian sailing boat[3]. It's made of wood.

A tall man called Kareem was the captain of the boat. A felucca is difficult[4] to sail, but Kareem was very strong and had the skills[5] to do it. The trip was amazing. We went slowly down the river in the warm[6] sunshine[7]. The boat had two white sails[8] which moved gently[9] in the wind. It was so quiet and peaceful[10] – a lovely way to travel.

We stopped to see some incredible[11] things along the way, too. I saw the Pyramids of Giza for the first time in my life. They were awesome![12] The Pyramids were huge and the stones were the color of gold. The Great Pyramid, the tallest of the three Pyramids, is 147 meters high. It was wonderful.

In the afternoon, we had a delicious lunch on board the felucca[13] and there was a man playing traditional Egyptian music on an *oud*[14]. He played beautifully and the music was magical[15] and relaxing. What a day! I had such a wonderful experience!

(1)	تجربة
(2)	تقليدى/شعبى
(3)	مركب شراعى
(4)	صعب
(5)	مهارات
(6)	دافئ
(7)	شعاع الشمس
(8)	شراع
(9)	برفق
(10)	مسالم
(11)	مدهش
(12)	رائع
(13)	على ظهر الفلوكة
(14)	آلة العود
(15)	سحرى

٦ يناير

لقد مررت اليوم بتجربة مذهلة ... ذهبت إلى رحلة بالفلوكة فى نهر النيل! الفلوكة هى قارب شراعى مصرى تقليدى. مصنوع من الخشب.

كان هناك رجل طويل يدعى كريم هو كابتن القارب. من الصعب الإبحار بالفلوكة ، إلا أن كريم كان قويًا جدًا ولديه المهارات اللازمة للقيام بذلك.كانت الرحلة مذهلة.ذهبنا ببطء فى النهر فى أشعة الشمس الدافئة. كان القارب يحتوى على شراعين لونهما أبيض يتحركان بلطف فى الرياح الدافئة. كانت المركب هادئة ومسالمة للغاية - يا لها طريقة جميلة للسفر.

توقفنا لرؤية بعض الأشياء المذهلة على طول الطريق أيضًا. رأيت أهرامات الجيزة لأول مرة فى حياتى، كانت رائعة! كانت الأهرامات ضخمة والأحجار بلون الذهب. الهرم الكبير، أطول الأهرامات الثلاثة، يبلغ ارتفاعه ١٤٧ مترًا، كان رائعًا.

بعد الظهر، تناولنا وجبة غداء لذيذة على متن الفلوكة، وكان هناك رجل يعزف الموسيقى المصرية التقليدية على العود. عزف بشكل جميل وكانت الموسيقى ساحرة ومريحة، يا له من يوم! لقد مررت بتجربة رائعة للغاية!



Read and notice: اقرأ ولاحظ:

How to write a diary

A diary has features that are different from other types of text.
المذكرة الشخصية لها خصائص مختلفة عن أنواع النصوص الأخرى.

A It usually has short paragraphs, each one about what happened on a single day.
عادة ما تحتوى على فقرات قصيرة، كل فقرة حول ما حدث فى يوم منفرد.

B It is usually written in an informal style and uses first-person pronouns (I, we, my, etc.)
عادة ما تكتب بأسلوب غير رسمى وتستخدم ضمائر المتكلم (أنا - نحن - لدى).

C It usually describes the writer's thoughts, feelings, and opinions.
عادة ما تصف أفكار الكاتب ومشاعره وآراءه.

D It usually describes people, places, and experiences.
عادة ما تصف الأشخاص والأماكن والتجارب.

e.g.

Write a diary of about 50–60 words using the following guiding elements:

"My visit to Alexandria"

How and when did you go there? – How did you feel about it?

....

....

....

....



Lessons 4 & 5



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and complete:

1 We had a delicious lunch on .... the felucca.

2 A man was playing traditional Egyptian music on an ....

3 I had such a wonderful ....

2 Read and match (A) with (B):

A

1 A felucca is a traditional Egyptian sailing boat.

2 The boat had two white sails ...

3 The Pyramids were huge ...

4 The Great Pyramid ...

B

a. (   ) and the stones were the color of gold.

b. (   ) It's made of wood.

c. (   ) We went slowly down the river.

d. (   ) which moved gently in the wind.

e. (   ) is the tallest of the three Pyramids.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

My name is Nadeen. I went on a boat trip with my friends last weekend. A tall, serious man called Adel was the captain of the boat. The trip was amazing. We went slowly down the river in the warm sunshine. The boat had two white sails which moved gently in the warm wind. It was so quiet and calm–a lovely way to travel. We listened to music along the way. There was a man who played the flute. He played beautifully and the music was magical. It was a wonderful, peaceful trip.

A Choose the correct word from a, b, c, or d:

1 Adel was the .... of the boat.

a) friend b) captain c) sail d) sunshine

2 The underlined word "peaceful" means ....

a) noisy b) loud c) frightening d) quiet

B Answer the following questions:

3 When did Nadeen and her friends go on a boat trip?

....

4 What musical instrument did the man play?

....

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1 is – made – of – The felucca – wood.

....

2 had – an – experience – Today, – I – amazing.

....

3 is – The Great – high – Pyramid – 147 – meters.

....

4 had – We – a delicious – on – lunch – the felucca.

....

5 Punctuate the following:

I had such a wonderful experience in egypt

....

6 Write a diary of about 50–60 words using the following guiding elements:

مجاب عنه آخر الكتاب

"My trip to Al-Fayoum"

"fascinated by the waterfall – such a peaceful trip"

....

....

....

....

Unit 5 REVIEW



Vocabulary


go on a voyage


ride a camel


travel by train


sail by ship


take a trip


go on a journey

Language Focus

Past Simple Tense

Affirmative sentence:

Subject (الفاعل) + التصريف الثانى للفعل ... .


Archaeologists went to the area to find out more.

Negative sentence:

Subject + didn't + (inf.) مصدر الفعل ... .


We didn't have a vacation this year.

Yes/No question:

A: Did + subject + inf. مصدر الفعل ...?

B: Yes,	subject	did.
B: No,		didn't.


A: Did Dalida find her book?
B: Yes, she did.
B: No, she didn't.

Wh- question:

A: Question word	did	subject.	(inf. مصدر الفعل) ...?

B: subject (الفاعل) التصريف الثانى للفعل....


A: Where did you find your books?
B: I found them in my bag.

Pronunciation

/dʒ/


huge


fridge


age


joke


dangerous



language


cage


bridge


village


damaged


Jerry


arrange


luggage


Japan

/ʒ/


measure

treasure


usually


leisure


Asia


television


pleasure





Lesson 1

إجازة	....	يركب جملًا	....
يقوم برحلة قصيرة	....	يبحر بالسفينة	....
كرواتيا	....	يسافر بالقطار	....
يذهب فى رحلة طويلة	....	يذهب فى رحلة بحرية	....
مستكشف	....	مذكرات سفر	....

Lesson 2

مفاجئ	....	طين	....
متطور	....	إلهام	....
اكتشاف	....	أدوات	....
منحوتات	....	علماء الآثار	....
حضارة	....	ثقافة	....

Lesson 3

ضخم	....	منبهر	....
ثلاجة	....	جمال وحيدة السنم	....
عمر / سن	....	قافلة	....
نكتة	....	يتمايل	....
قرية	....	أرض قاحلة	....
خطير	....	يلتف	....
لغة	....	كوبرى	....
محطم	....	أمتعة	....
يقيس	....	اليابان	....
يرتب	....	كنز	....
وقت فراغ	....	عادة	....
متعة	....	تلفزيون	....

تأكد من حفظك لكلمات الدروس قبل البدء فى إجابة اختبار الوحدة.

WRITING TIME



How to write about a famous traveler:

- (اسم الرحالة) was a famous traveler.
- He was born in (تاريخ ميلاده).
- (اسم الرحالة) is (جنسيته).
- His most famous journey was to (مكان).
- When he reached (المكان), he (نشاط قام به).
- He wrote his famous diaries that (محتوى المذكرة).

Marco Polo was a famous traveler. He was born in 1254 in Venice. Marco Polo is Italian. His most famous journey was to China. When he reached China, he recorded many information about different animals and plants. He wrote his famous diaries that described his journey.

How to write about experiences in the past:

- I went to + (مكان) with my family/ friends.
- We went by + (وسيلة مواصلات).
- We stayed there for a + (مدة زمنية).
- We enjoyed + (نشاط من الأنشطة).
- We visited + (معالم سياحية).
- My favorite thing was + نشاط because (السبب).

I went to Aswan with my family last year. We went there by train. We stayed there for a week. We enjoyed riding camels and boat sailing. We visited the Elephantine Island and Nubian villages. My favorite thing was boat trips because sailing is my favorite sport.

How to write a travel diary:

- I went on a trip to + مكان.
- We spent time + نشاط.
- I met a + شخص وصفاته.
- We stopped at + معالم سياحية.
- It was + صفات المعالم السياحية.
- At night, we + نشاط.
- It was + وصف.

Yesterday, I had an amazing experience. I went on a boat trip to Luxor. We spent time sailing in the Nile under the golden sunshine. I met a tall, serious woman called Noha. She was our boat captain. We stopped to see Temples of Abydos. It was tall, ancient, and fascinating. At night, we had dinner at a traditional restaurant. It was quiet and peaceful. The trip was amazing.

لكى تتمكن من كتابة الموضوعات بشكل مميز، اتبع هذه الخطوات.

STUDENT'S BOOK CORNER

1 Complete the dialog with the correct past simple form of the verb in brackets:

Sameh : How (1)................................. your trip, Kareem? (be)

Kareem : It (2)................................. really good, thanks. (be) We (3) .... to the Western Desert. (go).

Sameh : Wow! (4) .... you .... with your parents? (go)

Kareem : No, I (5)................................. with my uncle. (be) We (6)................................. some very nice places. (find)

Sameh : (7)................................. there any other children on the trip? (be)

Kareem : No, there (8)................................. . (be) But I (9)................................. fun! (have)

2 Circle the correct answer:

1 Hani didn't (go / went) on the palace tour with the guide.

2 A: Did your mom (made / make) your dress, Laila? B: Yes, she (did / didn't).

3 We didn't (have / had) a good meal in that restaurant.

4 The water in the sea (weren't / wasn't) warm.

5 A: Where did you (find / found) your books? B: They (was / were) in my bag.

3 Match the words to their meanings:

A

1 clay
2 inspiration
3 tools
4 sculptures
5 advanced
6 archaeologist
7 mystery

B

a. ( ) objects we use to make or do things
b. ( ) art made from stone or wood
c. ( ) modern or well developed
d. ( ) a type of earth that is sticky when wet
e. ( ) a person who studies very old objects that they find under the ground
f. ( ) something that people can not understand or explain
g. ( ) an example others use to help create new ideas



أسئلة إضافية مؤلفة للتدريب طبقًا لما ورد بكتاب الوزارة.

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

played – enjoyed – liked – went

Yesterday was a fun day. We .... to the beach and swam in the sea. We ate pizza and we .... handball. After that, we went to the cinema to watch a movie. We watched a funny movie and we ate popcorn. We .... our time.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 They .... travel to London last year.
a) don't b) didn't c) do d) doesn't

2 He .... a chocolate cake yesterday.
a) make b) making c) made d) makes

3 A: Were they sad? B: No, they ....
a) were b) aren't c) weren't d) wasn't

4 They .... to the zoo last weekend.
a) went b) go c) going d) goes

3 Correct the underlined words:

1 She be angry with her sister yesterday. (......................................)

2 Does Sama go to the hospital last Monday? (......................................)

3 They have a lovely day at the park yesterday. (......................................)

4 I go to the park to ride my bike two days ago. (......................................)







UNIT 5



1 Listen and write (True) or (False):

1 A felucca is a traditional Chinese sailing boat. ( )
2 A felucca is made of wood. ( )
3 Kareem was the captain. ( )

2 Listen and complete:

1 I was .... all day yesterday.
2 The weather was bad and there were some strong ....
3 In the ...., I had nothing to do but read my books.

Reading

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 They .... on a journey to an island called Korcula last year.
a) go b) goes c) went d) going
2 Salma .... by train last month. She went by plane.
a) isn't traveling b) don't travel c) didn't travel d) won't travel
3 Marco Polo was an Italian ....
a) scientist b) doctor c) explorer d) archaeologist
4 "..........................." is an example others use to help create new ideas.
a) Discovery b) Inspiration c) Advanced d) Tools

4 Read and match (A) with (B):

A	B
1 A: Were there any kids on the boat?	a. ( ) walked about without a direction.
2 The word "swaying" means ...	b. ( ) B: No, there weren't any.
3 A: What are you reading, Lama?	c. ( ) a bad dream.
4 The word "wandered" means ...	d. ( ) moving from side to side.
	e. ( ) B: It's my travel diary.

5 Read the text and answer the questions:

Marco Polo went to the Gobi Desert for the first time in 1275. He went toward Lop Nur, the last village before the empty wasteland of the desert. Marco knew that after this place, there was nothing for thousands of kilometers.

It was a mysterious and dangerous place. By day, it was boiling hot, by night, it was freezing cold. They went on silently, but often the wind made strange noises, like voices singing and drums playing far away. There were many strange legends about this desert. People said that travelers who were lost long ago in the desert wandered there.

A Choose the correct word from a, b, c, or d:

1 In 1275, Marco Polo went to the Gobi Desert for the .... time.

a) first b) second c) third d) tenth

2 The underlined word "legends" means ....

a) stories b) games c) songs d) poems

B Answer the following questions:

3 When did Marco Polo go to the Gobi Desert? ....

4 Summarize the main idea of the text in two sentences. ....

Writing

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1 did – How – people – to – get – China?

....

2 on – They – last – week – went – a vacation.

....

3 had – The – hair – complicated – sculptures – styles.

....

4 didn't – want – She – to go – journey – on a.

....

7 Punctuate the following:

where is Lop Nur

....

8 Write a diary of about 50-60 words using the following guiding elements:

مجاب عنه آخر الكتاب

"A felucca on the River Nile"

When was the trip? – What did you do?

....

....

....

....



< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practice more	Solve more exams	Well done!



Unit 6

Taking care

الاعتناء بنفسى

Unit Overview

Student's Book Exercises | Practice More | Answers 100% Q&A

- By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:
- بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون التلميذ قادرًا على أن:

- listen, read, research, and write about making things at home and how to take care of him/herself.
  - يستمع، يقرأ، يبحث، ويكتب عن عمل الأشياء فى المنزل وكيف يعتنى بنفسه.
- talk about quantities.
  - يتحدث عن الكميات.
- find the meaning of words in a text.
  - يجد معانى الكلمات فى نص.
- learn how to pronounce /ə/ in sentences.
  - يتعلم كيفية نطق /ə/ فى جمل.
- learn about personal care in Ancient Egypt.
  - يتعلم عن الاعتناء بالنفس فى مصر القديمة.
- write instructions to make something and quantities of ingredients.
  - يكتب تعليمات لعمل شىء ما وكميات المقادير.
- research and create a poster about different spices.
  - يبحث ويقوم بعمل ملصق عن التوابل المختلفة.

Did you know?

- When you brush your hair, it *spreads the natural oils from your skin through your hair from the roots to the ends. This protects your hair from heat and dirt and makes it look *shiny and healthy.

I can find it out!

- The most popular personal care routines people do every day are having fresh morning showers and using skin cleaners.

*spread ينشر	*shiny لامع



Lesson 1



Let's make candles!
هيا نصنع الشموع


Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر، وقل:

Main vocabulary


popsicle sticks
عصى المصاصة


drops
قطرات


wax
شمع


wick
فتيل

Extra vocabulary

perfume oil	زيت عطرى	candles	شموع
instructions	تعليمات	palm wax	شمع النخيل
grams	جرامات	enough (adj.)	كاف
little (adj.)	قليل / صغير	bottle	زجاجة
top	قمة	glass	كوب زجاجى
cotton rope	حبل قطنى	step	خطوة
cooker	بوتاجاز	soap crystals	بلورات الصابون
wooden spoon	ملعقة خشبية	hard (adj.)	صلب
soap container	حاوية الصابون	flower petals	بتلات الزهور

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعــــال منتظمــة

Present		Past	Present		Past
need	يحتاج	needed	squeeze	يعصر	squeezed
press	يضغط	pressed	heat	يسخن	heated
melt	يذوب	melted	stir	يقلب	stirred

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
make	يصنع	made	say	يقول	said
take	يأخذ	took	hold	يمسك	held

Expressions and Phrases

have something in mind	تفكر في شيء ما	great idea	فكرة رائعة
smell lovely	رائحته جميلة	Let's see	دعنا نرى



Let's say it right!

لاحظ أن حرف الـ (l) في كلمة (palm) لا ينطق "silent".

Vocabulary Check

When we listen for **quantities**, we look for numbers and words of measurement.

عندما نستمع إلى الكميات، نقوم بالبحث عن أرقام وكلمات القياس.

e.g. **kilograms, grams, liters, millimeters, spoons, packages and cans.**

Check point

Choose the correct answer:

1. The (oil – perfume oil – salt – water) smells lovely.
2. (Glasses – Wicks – Sticks – Bottles) are the cotton ropes inside the candles.
3. (Stir – Put – Heat – Press) the wax to melt it.
4. We need (oil – wood – paper – wax) to make candles.





Listen, read, and role-play: استمع، اقرأ، وتبادل الأدوار:

Mom: Hi, Laila. I love making things. Why don't we make something new?
مرحبًا ليلى. أنا أحب صنع الأشياء. لماذا لا نصنع شيئًا جديدًا؟



Laila: That's a great idea. Do you have something in mind?
إنها فكرة رائعة. هل تفكرين فى شىء ما؟



Mom: I have some perfume oil. We can use it to make candles.
لدى بعض الزيت العطرى. يمكننا استخدامه لصنع الشموع.



Laila: Candles? Wow! I love it!
الشموع؟ واو! أنا أحبها!



Mom: Here are the instructions. Can you read them out to me?
ها هى التعليمات. هل يمكنك أن تقرئيها لى بصوت عال؟



Laila: Right. First, we need some wax.
حسنًا. فى البداية، نحتاج بعضًا من الشمع.



Mom: Here it is. It's palm wax from Egyptian palm trees. It makes really nice candles. How much do we need?
ها هو، هذا شمع النخيل المستخلص من أشجار النخيل المصرية. إنه حقًّا يصنع شموعًا لطيفة. ما الكمية التى نحتاجها؟



Laila: It says, "Use 450 grams of wax to make three candles."
التعليمات تقول:«استخدم 450 جرامًا من الشمع لتقوم بعمل ثلاث شمعات ».



Mom: Okay, there's about 500 grams here. That's enough. What's next?
حسنًا، يوجد حوالى 500 جرام هنا. هذا يكفى. ماذا بعد؟



Laila: We need some perfume oil.
نحتاج إلى بعض الزيت العطرى.





Mom

Here. These are little bottles of lemon oil. Mmm ... they smell lovely. How much do we need?

ها هى، هذه زجاجات صغيرة من زيت الليمون . أممم ... إن رائحتها جميلة. ما الكمية التى نحتاجها؟



Laila

The instructions say, "Squeeze in about 40 drops of oil."

التعليمات تقول: «قم بعصر حوالى 40 قطرة من الزيت ».



Mom

Fine. And we can take about 15 flowers and press them on the tops of the candles.

حسنًا. ويمكننا أن نأخذ حوالى 15 زهرة ونضغطها فى أعلى أسطح الشموع.



Laila

Yes, good idea. Then we need one glass for each candle and one wick – that's the little cotton rope inside the candle.

نعم، إنها فكرة جيدة. سوف نحتاج لكوب زجاجى واحد وفتيل واحد لكل شمعة - إنه ذلك الحبل القطنى الصغير بداخل الشمعة.



Mom

Oh, yes. And we need some popsicle sticks to hold the wicks up in the glasses.

أوه، نعم. ونحتاج لبعض عصى المصاصة لتثبت الفتيل بداخل الأكواب.



Laila

So that's three glasses, three wicks, and three popsicle sticks, right? Now, what do we need to do first?

إذًا سنحتاج ثلاثة أكواب وثلاث فتائل وثلاث عصى مصاصة، أذلك صحيح؟ ماذا نحتاج لنفعل أولًا؟



Mom

Let's see ... "Step one: Heat the wax to melt it, then stir it well."

دعينا نرى... «الخطوة الأولى: قم بتسخين الشمع لإذابته، ثم قلبه جيدًا».

The instructions for making soap:

تعليمات صنع الصابون:

1 Put the ingredients for your soap in a bowl and heat them on a cooker.
ضع مكونات الصابون الخاص بك فى وعاء وقم بتسخينها على البوتجاز.

2 Next, stir the ingredients with a wooden spoon.
ثم قم بتقليب المكونات باستخدام ملعقة خشبية .

3 Take the ingredients off the cooker.
ابعد المكونات بعيدًا عن البوتاجاز.

4 When the ingredients are hard and cool, add them into a soap container.
عندما تصبح المكونات صلبة وباردة، قم بإضافتها فى حاوية الصابون.

5 You can press flower petals to make the soap look and smell lovely.
يمكنك أن تقوم بضغط بتلات الزهور لجعل شكل الصابون ورائحته جميلة.



Lesson 1



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and complete:

1 First, they needed about 450 grams of .... to make three candles.

2 The lemon .... smelled lovely.

3 They needed three popsicle .... to hold the wicks.

2 Read and match (A) with (B):

A	B
1 Here are the instructions ...	a. ( ) to melt it.
2 Palm wax comes from ...	b. ( ) 40 drops of oil.
3 I have this bottle of lemon oil.	c. ( ) for making the candles.
4 Heat the wax ...	d. ( ) It smells lovely.
	e. ( ) Egyptian palm trees.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

Here are the instructions for making the candles. First, you need some wax. You can use palm wax that comes from Egyptian palm trees. Use 450 grams of wax to make three candles. You also need some perfume oil. You can use lemon oil. It smells lovely. Squeeze about 40 drops of the oil. You can use flower petals and press them on the top of the candles. First, heat the wax to melt it and stir it well. Put the wax in the glasses. Then, put the wicks inside the glasses. Use popsicle sticks to hold the wicks.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The underlined word "wicks" means ....

a) wooden sticks b) small bottles c) cotton ropes d) perfume oil

2 The main idea of the text is about ....

a) making candles b) Egyptian palm trees

c) flower petals d) palm wax

B Answer the following questions:

3 Where does palm wax come from?

....

4 How many grams of wax do we need to make three candles?

....

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1 little – bottles – I – have – oil – of – lemon.

....

2 one – You – need – for each – wick – candle.

....

3 use – to – We – make – perfume – can – oil – candles.

....

4 the – to – wax – Heat – it – melt.

....

5 Punctuate the following:

Palm wax comes from egyptian palm trees

....

6 Write a paragraph of about 50–60 words using the following guiding elements:

مجاب عنه آخر الكتاب

"Instructions for making candles"

450 g of wax – 40 drops of oil

....

....

....

....







Listen and say: استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

barley	شعير	festivals	احتفالات	herbs	أعشاب

Extra vocabulary

well	بطريقة جيدة	paintings	رسومات	flood	فيضان
garlic	ثوم	lentils	عدس	wheat	قمح
probably	من المحتمل	geese	إوز	drinks	مشروبات
taste	مذاق	jar	إناء (برطمان)	occasion	مناسبة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمـة

Present		Past	Present		Past
depend on	يعتمد على	depended on	cook	يطهى	cooked
preserve	يحفظ	preserved	dry	يجفف	dried

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

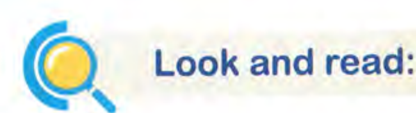
Present		Past	Present		Past
eat	يأكل	ate	drink	يشرب	drank

Expressions and Phrases

take care	يعتنى بـ	for longer	لمدة أطول

Definitions

barley	a plant whose seeds we can use to make bread and other things نبات يمكننا استخدام بذوره فى صنع الخبز وأشياء أخرى
herbs	plants with a strong taste often used in cooking نباتات لها مذاق قوى عادة تستخدم فى الطهى
festivals	a special occasion when people play music and eat nice food مناسبة خاصة عندما يعزف الناس الموسيقى ويأكلون طعامًا لذيذًا
preserve	add something to food to make it last for longer إضافة شىء ما للطعام لجعله يدوم لمدة أطول.



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

Paintings from Ancient Egyptians show that people at this time took care of their bodies and ate very well! So what did the Ancient Egyptians eat and drink?
The water of the Nile has always helped Egyptian farmers to grow a lot of fruit and vegetables. At this time, the vegetables they could grow often depended on how much water came from the Nile floods. Ancient Egyptian farmers usually grew onions, garlic, lentils, and beans and people cooked with all these vegetables. Farmers also grew wheat and barley. People used this to make bread and they ate a lot of this every day.

تظهر لوحات المصريين القدماء أن الناس فى هذا الوقت كانوا يعتنون بأجسادهم ويأكلون جيدًا! فماذا كان يأكل ويشرب المصريون القدماء؟
لقد ساعدت مياه النيل دائمًا المزارعين المصريين على زراعة الكثير من الفواكه والخضراوات. فى هذا الوقت، كانت الخضراوات التى يمكنهم زراعتها تعتمد فى كثير من الأحيان على كمية المياه القادمة من فيضانات النيل. عادة ما كان المزارعون المصريون القدماء يزرعون البصل والثوم والعدس والفول، وكان الناس يطهون كل هذه الخضراوات. كما قام المزارعون بزراعة القمح والشعير، اللذين تم استخدامهما من قِبَل الناس لصنع الخبز. كانوا يأكلون الكثير منه كل يوم.

Most people in Ancient Egypt only ate a little meat, usually at festivals. They probably ate a few fish and birds like ducks, geese, and chickens. They also ate some eggs and cheese from cows or goats.
There were a lot of bees in Ancient Egypt, and that means there was honey!
People often used honey with bread and cream to make cakes. They also used a few dates or figs to make sweet fruit drinks.

كان معظم الناس فى مصر القديمة يأكلون القليل من اللحوم فقط، عادة فى المهرجانات. من المحتمل أنهم أكلوا عددًا قليلًا من الأسماك والطيور مثل البط والإوز والدجاج. كما أكلوا بعض البيض والجبن من الأبقار أو الماعز.
كان هناك الكثير من النحل فى مصر القديمة، وهذا يعنى أنه كان هناك عسل!
غالبًا ما كان يستخدم الناس العسل مع الخبز والقشدة لصنع الكعك. كما استخدموا أيضًا القليل من التمر أو التين لصنع مشروبات الفاكهة الحلوة.

Some families also knew how to use spices and herbs to make their cooking taste better, and they also knew how to preserve food. For example, they dried fish or used salt to preserve it, and used jars to keep fruit and vegetables for the winter.

كما عرفت بعض العائلات كيفية استخدام التوابل والأعشاب لتحسين مذاق طبخهم، كما عرفوا أيضًا كيفية حفظ الطعام. على سبيل المثال، كانوا يجففون الأسماك أو يستخدمون الملح لحفظها، ويستخدمون الأوانى (البرطمانات) لحفظ الفواكه والخضراوات لفصل الشتاء.

Language Focus

Countable and uncountable nouns

الأسماء المعدودة وغير المعدودة

Countable nouns:

- هى الأسماء التى (تعد) ولها مفرد وجمع.
- الأسماء التى تعد تسبق بأداة نكرة (a/an).

a mango	المانجو	mangoes
a store	محل	stores
a student	طالب	students
an apple	تفاحة	apples

Uncountable nouns:

- هى الأسماء التى (لا تعد)، ليس لها جمع وتعامل معاملة المفرد.
- الأسماء التى لا تعد لا تسبق بأداة نكرة (a/an) .

sugar	سكر
traffic	مرور
oil	زيت
juice	عصير
money	نقود
homework	واجب منزلى

some/any with countable and uncountable nouns to talk about quantities.

some

- تستخدم «some» مع الجمل المثبتة والعرض والطلب.

- There are some girls from Luxor in my class. (جملة مثبتة)
- Would you like some tea? (عرض)
- Can you buy some bread, please? (طلب)

any

- تستخدم "any" مع الجمل المنفية والسؤال.

- There aren't any tigers in Egypt. (جملة منفية)
- Is there any honey left in the jar? (سؤال)

Asking about quantities السؤال عن الكميات

1) Asking and answering about quantities of countable things:
السؤال والإجابة عن كميات الأشياء التى تعد:

للسؤال عن كميات الأشياء التى تعد نستخدم:

Question:



A: How many + countable noun ..... ?

How many lemons do we need for a lemonade?

كم عدد الليمون الذى نحتاج إليه لعصير الليمون؟

Answer:



a / an + (شيء مفرد) .... .



B: We need a lemon. نحتاج إلى ليمونة.

a number رقم (five, twenty,...) .... .



B: We need five lemons. نحتاج إلى ٥ ليمونات.

an approximate amount كمية تقريبية →
- some (بعض من) ..... .
- a few (قليل من) .... .
- a lot of (كثير من) ... .



B: We need a few lemons. نحتاج إلى القليل من الليمون.

2) Asking and answering about quantities of uncountable things:
السؤال والإجابة عن كميات الأشياء غير المعدودة:

للسؤال عن كميات الأشياء التى لا تعد نستخدم:

Question:



A: How much + uncountable noun ...?

How much oil do we need? كم كمية الزيت التى نحتاج إليها؟

Answer:

an approximate amount كمية تقريبية →
- some (بعض من) ..... .
- a little (قليل من).... .
- a lot of (كثير من) ... .



B: We need a little oil. نحتاج إلى القليل من الزيت.

How to make chocolate chip cookies
(makes 12 cookies)

Take 180 grams of flour(1) and add a little salt(2). Mix with 120 grams of butter(3) and 150 grams of sugar. Add one egg and a few drops of vanilla essence(4). Cut 150 grams of dark chocolate into a lot of small pieces(5). Stir the chocolate pieces into the mixture(6).

(1)	دقيق
(2)	ملح
(3)	زبد
(4)	مستخلص الفانيليا
(5)	قطع
(6)	خليط

Check point

Choose the correct answer:

1 How (much – many – often – old) wax do you need?
2 Please hurry. We don't have (a lot of – some – a few – a little) time. 

3 There are (a few – a little – any – much) flower petals.





Lesson 2



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and complete:

1 Radwa wants to make chocolate chip ....

2 She needs 180 .... of flour.

3 She needs a .... drops of vanilla.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 How .... milk do you need in your coffee, grandma?

a) many b) often c) much d) long

2 There are .... of leaves on the tree.

a) much b) a lot c) any d) little

3 How .... candles can you make?

a) much b) often c) many d) old

4 There isn't .... bread in the fridge.

a) some b) many c) any d) a lot of

3 Read and match (A) with (B):

A

1 How many math problems ...

2 There aren't ...

3 A: How much tea do you need?

4 "Preserve" means...

B

a. ( ) B: I need a little more tea.

b. ( ) to add something to food to make it last for longer.

c. ( ) did you do yesterday?

d. ( ) a little oil.

e. ( ) any tigers in Egypt.

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1 many – How – do – you – need – tomatoes?

....

2 aren't – in – the – There – any – fruits – fridge.

....

3 also – Farmers – wheat – grew – barley – and.

....

4 a little – in my – please – I – sugar – Can – have – coffee,?

....

5 Punctuate the following:

how much milk do you want in your tea, ola?

....

6 Write a paragraph of about 50–60 words using the following guiding elements:



"Making chocolate chip cookies"

180 grams of flour – a few drops of vanilla essence

....

....

....

....



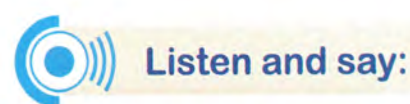
Lesson 3

Reading





Story



Listen and say: استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

caretakers	القائمين على الاعتناء بالمكان	crown	تاج	scepter	صولجان (عصا الملك)
throne	عرش	astonished (adj.)	مندهش	dust	تراب

Extra vocabulary

palace	قصر	precious (adj.)	ثمين	statues	تماثيل
strange (adj.)	غريب	dining room	غرفة الطعام	royal (adj.)	ملكي
prince	أمير	princess	أميرة	empty (adj.)	فارغ
dangerously	بشكل خطر	curtains	ستائر	quiet (adj.)	هادئ
hot (adj.)	ساخن	simply	ببساطة	future	مستقبل

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمـة

Present		Past	Present		Past
explore	يستكشف	explored	notice	يلاحظ	noticed
lean	يميل	leaned	knock	يطرق	knocked
explain	يشرح	explained	hurry	يتعجل	hurried
pick	يلتقط	picked	damage	يدمر	damaged

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
find	يجد	found	hear	يسمع	heard
understand	يفهم	understood	fall	يسقط	fell

Expressions and Phrases

full of	ملىء بـ	at once	في الحال
had to	كان يجب أن	have a bath	يستحم

The missing king الملك المفقود



Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

The beginning

1 Peter lives in a big palace where his parents are the caretakers. The palace is old and no one lives there now. Peter likes to explore the rooms. They are full of[1] interesting and precious things – old paintings, statues, carpets[2], furniture[3].
One day, Peter notices something strange about the big painting in the dining room. Usually, this colorful painting shows one of the old kings sitting on the throne with a crown on his head and a long scepter in his hand. The queen and the royal children - the prince and the princess - are next to him. But today the king's place in the painting is empty: he is missing!

(1)	ملیء بـ
(2)	سجاد
(3)	أثاث

يعيش بيتر فى قصر كبير حيث يكون والداه هما القائمين على الاعتناء بالمكان. القصر قديم ولا أحد يعيش هناك الآن. يحب بيتر اكتشاف الغرف. إنها مليئة بالأشياء المثيرة للاهتمام والثمينة - كاللوحات القديمة والتماثيل والسجاد والأثاث.
فى أحد الأيام، لاحظ بيتر شيئًا غريبًا على اللوحة الكبيرة فى غرفة الطعام. عادة ما تُظهر هذه اللوحة الملونة أحد الملوك القدامى يجلس على عرشه مع تاج على رأسه وصولجان طويل فى يده. الملكة والأطفال الملكيون- الأمير والأميرة بجانبه. لكن اليوم مكان الملك فى اللوحة فارغ: إنه مفقود!

The middle

2 Peter is surprised and looks carefully at the painting again. He can see the crown and scepter, but not the king. Also, the scepter is leaning dangerously over the princess's head. Peter knows he must find the king at once!
He goes through all of the rooms in the palace. He looks behind doors and curtains. Finally, he comes to the royal bathroom. He hears singing and knocks on the door. "Who is it?" says the king. "Please be quiet! I'm enjoying a hot bath!" Peter is astonished. When the king comes out, he says to him, "I spend years sitting in that painting and no one ever comes to wash the dust off me. Dust damages the painting. so I simply had to have a bath."

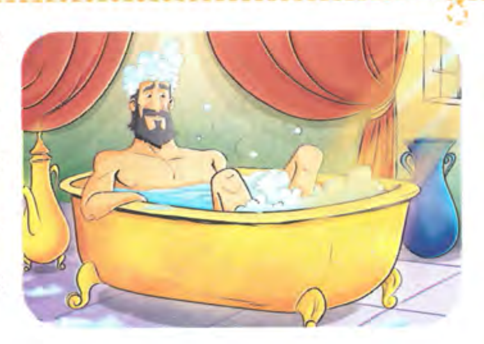


يتفاجأ بيتر وينظر بعناية فى اللوحة مرة أخرى. يمكنه رؤية التاج والصولجان، ولكن ليس الملك. كما أن الصولجان يميل بشكل خطير إلى رأس الأميرة الصغيرة! يعرف بيتر أنه يجب أن يجد الملك فى الحال!
يمر بيتر بجميع الغرف فى القصر، ينظر خلف الأبواب والستائر. وأخيرًا، يأتى إلى الحمام الملكى. يسمع صوت الغناء. يطرق على الباب «من هذا؟» يقول الملك. «من فضلك كن هادئًا! أنا أستمتع بحمام ساخن!». بيتر مندهش. عندما يخرج الملك، يقول له: «لقد أمضيت سنوات جالسًا فى تلك اللوحة ولم يأت أحد أبدًا ليغسل الغبار عنى. الغبار يدمر اللوحة. لذلك كان على ببساطة أن أستحم».



The end

3 Peter understands but explains to the king that his scepter is about to fall on the princess. "Thank you, my boy," the king says. "I will hurry back. But in the future, please clean the paintings in the palace. Otherwise, they'll be damaged forever!" and he runs back to the painting to pick up the scepter.



Peter now cleans all the paintings in the palace so that they aren't damaged - and so that no one has to leave their painting to have a good bath!

يفهم بيتر لكنه يشرح للملك أن صولجانه على وشك السقوط على الأميرة. «شكرًا لك يا ولدى» يقول الملك. «سأعود بسرعة. ولكن فى المستقبل، يرجى تنظيف اللوحات الموجودة فى القصر. وإلا فإنها سوف تتضرر إلى الأبد!» ويركض عائدًا إلى اللوحة ليلتقط الصولجان.

الآن يقوم بيتر بتنظيف كل اللوحات فى القصر حتى لا تتضرر-وحتى لا يضطر أحد إلى ترك لوحته لأخذ حمام جيد!

Check point

1 Why does Peter live in a palace? SB

....

2 Where did the king go?

....

Tip! You can use **pictures** in a story to help you understand new words.
You can also look at the words around an unknown word in a text to help you understand it. For example, is there an article (a/an/the) before the word, or an adjective?
If there is, it's a noun. You can then look at the sentences around it and think what the noun could mean in the context.

من الممكن أن نستخدم الصور فى القصة لنفهم الكلمات الجديدة. من الممكن أيضًا أن ننظر إلى الكلمات حول الكلمة غير المعروفة فى النص لتساعدك على فهم الكلمة غير المعروفة. على سبيل المثال هل كان هناك أداة نكرة مثل (a/an /the) قبل الكلمة أو صفة؟

إذا كان هناك شيء من ذلك فهذا يعنى أنها اسم. يمكنك أن تتمعن فى الجمل حولها وتفكر ماذا يمكن أن يعنى هذا الاسم من خلال السياق.

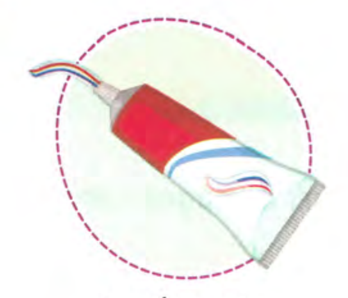


Social studies

Ancient Egyptian Traditions

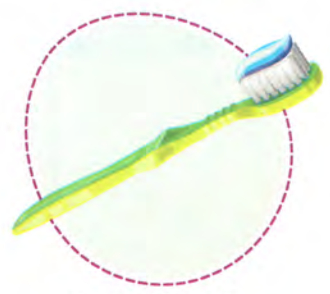


Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:


toothpaste
معجون أسنان


cream
كريم


soap
صابون


toothbrush
فرشاة أسنان


hairbrush
فرشاة شعر


perfume
عطر


shampoo
شامبو

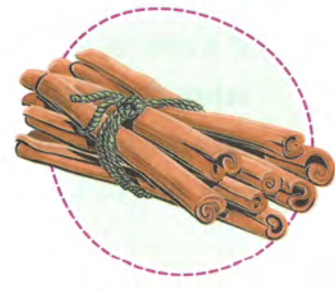


stick
عصا


incense
بخور / عطر


powder
مسحوق


cardamom
الهيل


cinnamon
قرفة



Extra vocabulary

traditions	عادات	personal care	عناية شخصية	products	منتجات
popular (adj.)	شائع (مشهور)	Kapet	كابت «اسم عطر فرعونى»	expensive (adj.)	غالى الثمن
ingredients	مكونات	common (adj.)	شائع	herbs	أعشاب
rosemary	روزمارى (نوع من التوابل)	spices	توابل	cheaper (adj.)	أرخص
minerals	معادن	cone shape	مخروطى الشكل	festivals	احتفالات
mint	نعناع	rock salt	ملح صخرى	pepper	فلفل
papyrus	ورق البردى	iris flower	زهرة السوسن	mint candies	حلوى النعناع
melon	شمام(كنتالوب)	pine seeds	بذور الصنوبر		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمـة

Present		Past	Present		Past
love	يحب	loved	mix	يخلط	mixed
press	يضغط	pressed	tie	يربط	tied
rub	يفرك	rubbed	heat	يسخن	heated

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
find	يجد	found	wear	يرتدى	wore
leave	يغادر / يترك	left	cut	يقطع	cut

Expressions and Phrases

difficult to find	صعب الحصول عليه	quite strange	غريب إلى حد ما

Personal care in the past



Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

Many of the products we use today for personal care were first used in Ancient Egypt!

معظم أدوات العناية الشخصية التى نستخدمها اليوم كانت تستخدم فى مصر القديمة!



Perfumes

The Ancient Egyptians (1) loved strong perfumes. The most popular perfume was called "Kapt". It was expensive because it had a lot of ingredients, some of which were difficult (2) to find. But it also had a few common herbs in it, like rosemary and mint, and spices like cardamom and cinnamon. Cheaper perfumes were made from flowers, herbs, and some types of minerals, then mixed with oil to make a cream. Or they pressed the dry ingredients into a cone shape to make incense. In Ancient Egyptian paintings you can often see men and women wearing these perfume cones on their heads at festivals (3)!

(1)	المصريون القدماء
(2)	صعب
(3)	احتفالات

العطور:

أحب المصريون القدماء العطور القوية. كان العطر الأكثر شعبية يسمى «كابت». كان مكلفًا لأنه يحتوى على الكثير من المكونات، وبعضها كان من الصعب العثور عليه. ولكنه يحتوى أيضًا على بعض الأعشاب مثل الروزمارى والنعناع، وبعض التوابل مثل الهيل والقرفة. صُنعت العطور الأرخص من الزهور والأعشاب وبعض أنواع المعادن، ثم خلطوها مع الزيت لصنع الكريم، أو ضغطوا المكونات الجافة فى شكل مخروط لصنع البخور. فى اللوحات المصرية القديمة يمكنك رؤية الرجال والنساء الذين يرتدون مخاريط العطر هذه على رءوسهم فى المهرجانات!



Toothpaste

To clean their teeth, Ancient Egyptians used a type of toothbrush – a stick[4] with small pieces of papyrus tied to it at one end. The ingredients of their toothpaste were a mint, rock salt, pepper, and dried iris flowers. They put this dry powder[5] directly onto their teeth and rubbed it with their toothbrushes.



معجون الأسنان:

لتنظيف أسنانهم ، استخدم المصريون القدماء نوعًا من فرشاة الأسنان - عصا مع قطع صغيرة من البردى مربوطة بها فى أحد الطرفين.كانت مكونات معجون الأسنان تحتوى على النعناع والملح الصخرى والفلفل وزهور السوسن المجففة. يضعون هذه البودرة الجافة مباشرة على أسنانهم ويفركونها بفرش الأسنان.

عصا	(4)
مسحوق	(5)

Breath Mints

To keep their mouths fresh all day, the Ancient Egyptians made mint candies. They mixed cinnamon, melon, pine seeds, and some nuts together with honey. Then they heated the mixture over a fire, left it to cool, and cut it into small square candies.



نفَس برائحة النعناع:

للحفاظ على رائحة نفَسهم منتعشة طوال اليوم، صنع المصريون القدماء حلوى النعناع. قاموا بخلط القرفة والشمام وبذور الصنوبر وبعض المكسرات مع العسل.ثم قاموا بتسخين الخليط فوق النار، وتركوه ليبرد، وقطعوه إلى حلوى مربعة صغيرة.

Check point

1 What was the most popular perfume called?

....

2 What did the Ancient Egyptians use to clean their teeth?

....



Lesson 3



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and complete:

1 Peter lives in a big palace where his parents are the ....

2 Peter likes to .... the empty rooms of the palace.

3 They are full of interesting old ...., statues, and furniture.

2 Read and match (A) with (B):

A

1 Ancient Egyptians made cheaper perfumes ...

2 The king has a crown on his head ...

3 Peter lives in a big palace ...

4 Many personal care products that we use today ...

B

a. (   ) with his parents.

b. (   ) were used in Ancient Egypt.

c. (   ) from herbs, flowers, and some types of minerals.

d. (   ) for making candles.

e. (   ) and a scepter in his hand.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

One day, Peter notices something strange about the big painting in the dining room. Usually, this colorful painting shows one of the old kings sitting on the throne with a crown on his head and a long scepter in his hand. The queen and the royal children - the prince and the princess- are next to him. But today, the king's place in the painting is empty: he is missing! The scepter of the king was leaning dangerously towards the little princess. So Peter must find the missing king at once.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The king had a .... on his head.

a) princess b) palace c) crown d) scepter

2 The big painting is in the ....

a) kitchen b) living room c) bedroom d) garden

B Answer the following questions:

3 What is strange about the painting?

....

4 Summarize the main idea of the text in two sentences.

....

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1 Egyptians – mint – The – made – candies – Ancient.

....

2 about – There – thing – was – a strange – the – painting.

....

3 find – Where – king – Peter – does – the?

....

4 cleans – Peter – all the – in the – palace – paintings.

....

5 Punctuate the following:

They mixed cinnamon, melon pine seed, and some nuts together

....

6 Write a paragraph of about 50–60 words using the following guiding elements:

مجاب عنه آخر الكتاب

"Perfumes in Ancient Egypt"

- What did the Ancient Egyptians use to make perfumes?
- What was the most popular perfume in Ancient Egypt?

....

....

....

....



Lessons 4 & 5





Writing



Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

Salt dough recipe وصفة عجينة الملح

1- Preparation time[1]

10 minutes + 3 hours for cooking

2- Ingredients[2]

1 cup of plain flour[3] (about 250g)

½ a cup of salt (about 125 g)

½ a cup of water (about 125 ml)



3- Method[4]

- Heat the oven on a low temperature[5].
- Mix the flour and salt in a large bowl[6]. Add a little water, then a little more, and stir the mixture[7] until it starts to form[8] a ball.
- Put the ball of dough on a flat surface[9] and work it into the shape you want. You can roll it flat and cut out shapes, numbers, or letters, or use the dough to make 3D objects[10].
- Put your finished items on a baking tray[11] and bake in the oven for 3 hours until it is hard.
- Leave the items[12] to cool, then paint[13] them.

(1)	وقت الإعداد
(2)	المكونات
(3)	دقيق سادة
(4)	الطريقة
(5)	درجة حرارة منخفضة
(6)	وعاء
(7)	مزيج
(8)	يشكل
(9)	سطح مستوٍ
(10)	أشكال ثلاثية الأبعاد
(11)	صينية خبز
(12)	أغراض
(13)	يدهن



When we write instructions for the steps in a process, we often number them. This shows the reader that they have to do the steps in order to complete the process correctly.

عندما نكتب تعليمات لخطوات فى عملية ما، عادة ما نقوم بترقيمهم. هذا يوضح للقراء أن عليهم القيام بالخطوات بالترتيب ليكملوا العملية بنجاح.

الترجمة:

١- وقت التحضير

١٠ دقائق + ٣ ساعات من الطهى

٢- المكونات

كوب واحد من الدقيق العادى (حوالى ٢٥٠ جم)

نصف كوب من الملح. حوالى (١٢٥ جم)

نصف كوب من الماء (حوالى ١٢٥ ملم)

٣- الطريقة

١- سخن الفرن على درجة حرارة منخفضة.

٢- اخلط الدقيق والملح فى وعاء كبير.أضف القليل من الماء، ثم أكثر قليلًا، وحرك الخليط حتى يبدأ فى تشكيل كرة.

٣- ضع كرة العجين على سطح مستو وقم بالعمل بالشكل الذى تريده. يمكنك لفها بشكل مسطح وقطعها إلى أشكال أو أرقام أو حروف أو استخدام العجين لصنع أشكال ثلاثية الأبعاد.

٤- ضع الأغراض النهائية على صينية الخبز واخبزها فى الفرن لمدة ٣ ساعات حتى تصبح صلبة.

٥- اترك الأغراض لتبرد ثم ادهنها.





Look and read: انظر واقرأ:



Egyptian flavors(1)!

Egypt is famous for its spices that are used in home cooking(2) and restaurants all across the country. Special combinations(3) of different spices are a secret(4) ingredient in many recipes. But what else can we make with spices, beside delicious dishes? We can also use them to make perfume, and medicine(5), and to color cloth. They also make great souvenirs, and are beautifully packaged for tourists visiting spice stores and souks.

(1)	نكهات
(2)	الطهى
(3)	تركيبات
(4)	سر
(5)	دواء

النكهات المصرية!

تشتهر مصر بتوابلها التى تستخدم فى الطبخ المنزلى والمطاعم فى جميع أنحاء البلد. تعتبر التركيبات الخاصة من التوابل المختلفة مكونًا سريًا فى العديد من الوصفات ولكن ماذا يمكننا أن نصنع بالتوابل بجانب الأطباق اللذيذة؟ يمكننا أيضًا أن نستخدمها فى العطور والأدوية وتلوين القماش. كما أنها تمثل هدايا تذكارية رائعة، ويتم تعبئتها بشكل جميل للسياح الذين يزورون متاجر التوابل والأسواق.



Lessons 4 & 5



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and complete:

1 To make a salt plain dough, you need 1 cup of plain ....

2 Heat the oven on a low ....

3 .... the mixture until it starts to form a ball.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 .... the oven on a low temperature.

a) Stir b) Heat c) Put d) Cut

2 Special combinations of different spices .... a secret ingredient in many recipes.

a) is b) do c) are d) was

3 We use plain .... in a salt dough recipe.

a) flower b) floor c) flour d) four

4 Tourists buy .... when they visit Egypt.

a) pyramids b) souvenirs c) cars d) houses

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

Egypt is famous for its spices that are used in home cooking and restaurants all across the country. Special combinations of different spices are a secret ingredient in many recipes. And we don't only use spices to cook food, we also use them in perfume, medicine, and to color cloth. Spices are sold in stores, on the streets, and in the souks. Fresh, colorful and beautifully packaged spices are one of the favorite souvenirs that tourists buy when they visit Egypt.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The main idea of the text is about ....

a) Egyptian restaurants b) Egyptian stores

c) Egyptian spices d) Egyptian streets

2 The underlined word "souvenirs" means ....

a) gifts b) herbs c) food d) stores

B Answer the following questions:

3 What is Egypt famous for?

....

4 Write two uses of the Egyptian spices.

....

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1 are – used – Spices – cooking – in – home.

....

2 to make – salt – You – need – dough – 250 g of – flour

....

3 buy – visit – Tourists – they – when – spices – Egypt.

....

4 its – famous – Egypt – for – spices – is.

....

5 Punctuate the following:

egypt is famous for its spices

....

6 Write a paragraph of about 50–60 words using the following guiding elements:

مجاب عنه آخر الكتاب

"Egyptian spices"

special combination – cooking

....

....

....

....

Unit 6 REVIEW

Vocabulary



popsicle sticks

drops



wax

wick

Language Focus



Asking about quantities

1) Asking and answering about quantities of countable things:

Question:

A: How many + countable noun + ... ?

How many lemons **do we need for a lemonade?**

Answer:

a / an + (شيء مفرد) .... .

B: **We need** a **lemon.**

a number رقم (five, twenty,...) .... .

B: **We need** five **lemons.**

an approximate amount كمية تقريبية → **some (بعض من) .... .** / **a few (قليل من) .... .** / **a lot of (كثير من) .... .**

B: **We need** a few **lemons.**

2) Asking and answering about quantities of uncountable things:

Question:

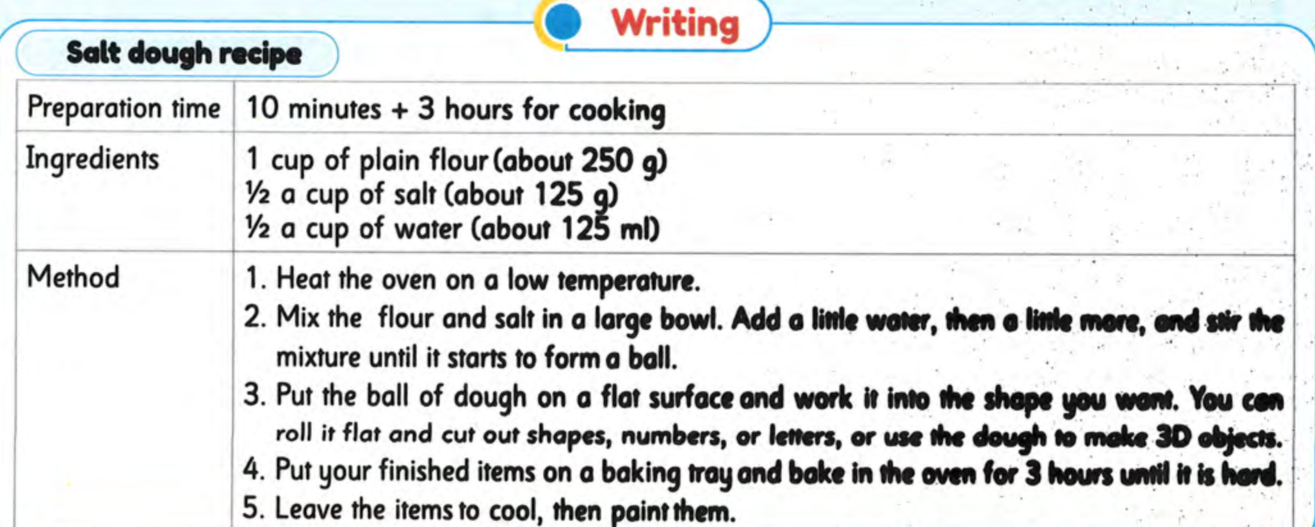
A: How much + uncountable noun + ...?

How much oil **do we need?**

an approximate amount كمية تقريبية → **some (بعض من) .... .** / **a little (قليل من) .... .** / **a lot of (كثير من) .... .**

B: **We need** a little **oil.**

Writing



Salt dough recipe

Preparation time	10 minutes + 3 hours for cooking
Ingredients	1 cup of plain flour (about 250 g) ½ a cup of salt (about 125 g) ½ a cup of water (about 125 ml)
Method	1. Heat the oven on a low temperature. 2. Mix the flour and salt in a large bowl. Add a little water, then a little more, and stir the mixture until it starts to form a ball. 3. Put the ball of dough on a flat surface and work it into the shape you want. You can roll it flat and cut out shapes, numbers, or letters, or use the dough to make 3D objects. 4. Put your finished items on a baking tray and bake in the oven for 3 hours until it is hard. 5. Leave the items to cool, then paint them.





Lesson 1

يسخن	....	عصى مصاصة	....
يقلب	....	قطرات	....
تعليمات	....	شمع	....
زيت عطرى	....	يضغط	....
فتيل	....	يعصر	....
بتلات زهور	....	شموع	....

Lesson 2

شعير	....	احتفالات	....
أعشاب	....	رسومات	....
إوز	....	قمح	....
فيضان	....	يحفظ	....

Lesson 3

القائمون على الاعتناء بالمكان	....	عرش	....
صولجان (عصا الملك)	....	تراب	....
تاج	....	شامبو	....
صابونة	....	فرشاة شعر	....
قرفة	....	معجون أسنان	....
فرشاة أسنان	....	عطر	....

تأكد من حفظك لكلمات الدروس قبل البدء فى إجابة اختبار الوحدة.

WRITING TIME



How to write instructions for making candles:

- First, we need + (اكتب المكونات التى تحتاجها).
- We need + (الكمية التى نحتاجها من كل مكون)
- Then, + (الخطوة الثانية من عمل الشمع)
- Finally, + (آخر خطوة فى عمل الشمع)

Here are the instructions for making candles. First, we need wax, wicks and perfume oil. We need 450 grams of wax to make three candles. Then, heat the wax to melt it and stir it well. Squeeze about 40 drops of oil on hot wax. Then, put the wax into shaping glasses. Put some popsicle sticks to hold the wicks in the glasses. Finally, let it cool down to get hard.

How to write about Ancient Egyptians personal care traditions:

- The Ancient Egyptians loved + (اكتب شيئًا كان يستخدمه المصريون القدماء فى العناية الشخصية مثل العطور)
- They used + (شىء كان يتميز به المصريون القدماء فى العناية الشخصية)

The Ancient Egyptians loved strong perfumes. The most popular perfume was called Kapet. They also used toothbrushes to clean their teeth. They also made mint candies to keep their mouths fresh all day.

How to write about quantities in a recipe:

- Use numbers + units of measurements like (grams/millimeters) للتحدث عن الكميات
- Use measurement expressions such as: (a little/some/a few) (للتحدث عن الكميات)
- Use to + inf... (للتعبير عن الغرض)

I made pancakes yesterday. I needed about 250 g of flour. I needed one cup of milk and a teaspoon of salt. I added a few eggs to the mixture but it was hard. So, I needed a little more milk. I heated the pan to bake the pancakes. I think I needed three cups of flour to make ten pancakes. I cooked them on low temperature.

لكى تتمكن من كتابة الموضوعات بشكل مميز، اتبع هذه الخطوات.



STUDENT'S BOOK CORNER

1 Match the verbs to the pictures:

1 stir ○ 2 squeeze ○ 3 press ○ 4 heat ○

○  ○  ○  ○ 

2 Complete the dialog with " How many/ How much":

1 Hani : .... milk do you want in your coffee, Grandma?

Grandma : Just a little milk, thanks Hani.

2 Fareeda : .... students are there in your English class, Dalia?

Dalia : There are about forty, I think.

3 Sherif : .... math problems did you do yesterday?

Karim : Just a few. They were difficult.

4 Rana : I'm going to the market now. .... tomatoes do we need?

Mom : Please get a kilo of tomatoes and some fruit.

3 Circle the correct answer:

1 Please hurry. We don't have a lot of / a few time.

2 Can I have a little / a few sugar in my coffee, please?

3 There isn't some / any bread. Can you buy some / a few?

4 How many / much candles does 450 grams of wax make?

5 How many / much cooking oil do I need to put in the pan?



1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

(need – some – few – lot)

Yesterday, I went to the supermarket to buy vegetables and fruits. I bought .... potatoes, I bought a watermelon, some tomatoes, and cucumbers. I also bought ten bananas, six apples and three mangoes. I .... some limes too, so I bought a .... limes.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 .... much sugar do you need?

a) What b) Who c) How d) What

2 I have .... apple and a banana.

a) an b) four c) some d) little

3 We need a .... oil.

a) little b) a c) an d) few

4 A: How .... mangoes do they need for the cake? B: They need three mangoes.

a) much b) many c) often d) do

3 Correct the underlined words:

1 I need <u>an</u> milk. (..........................)

2 <u>Who</u> much tea do you need? (..........................)

3 How <u>many</u> sugar do we need? (..........................)

4 How <u>much</u> students are there in your school? (..........................)

Test Yourself 30 — UNIT 6





1 Listen and write (True) or (False):

1. The Ancient Egyptians didn't love perfumes. ( )
2. The most popular perfume was called "Kapet". ( )
3. "Kapet" was cheap because it had a lot of ingredients. ( )

2 Listen and complete:

1. Ahmed will go to the .... with his mom.
2. They need to buy .... and some fruit.
3. They need a .... lemons.

Reading

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. ".........................." are plants with strong taste often used in cooking.
   a) Flowers b) Herbs c) Fruits d) Ducks
2. A: How .... popsicle sticks do you need? B: I need three.
   a) much b) many c) often d) old
3. There isn't .... oil left in the bottle.
   a) some b) any c) few d) little
4. .... the wax to melt it.
   a) Heat b) Press c) Squeeze d) Cool

4 Read and match (A) with (B):

A

1. A " festival" is a special occasion ...
2. I am going to the store, mom.
3. The most popular perfume in Ancient Egypt ...
4. A: How many lemons do we need?

B

a. ( ) was called "Kapet".
b. ( ) B: We need a few lemons.
c. ( ) when people play music and eat nice food.
d. ( ) very special places.
e. ( ) How many tomatoes do you want?

5 Read the text and answer the questions:

Ancient Egyptians used to be clean. They had special personal care routines. They loved strong perfumes. The most popular perfume was called " Kapet". Cheaper perfumes were

made from flowers, herbs, and some types of minerals, then mixed with oil to make a cream, or they pressed the dry ingredients into a cone shape to make incense. They also keep their mouths fresh all day by making mint candies. They mixed cinnamon, melon, pine seeds, and some nuts together with honey. Then, they cut the mixture into small square candies.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The main idea of the text is about ....

a) personal care in the past
b) Egyptian perfumes
c) mint
d) some herbs

2 Cinnamon and .... are spices.

a) honey
b) nuts
c) pepper
d) candies

B Answer the following questions:

3 What were the ingredients of the cheaper perfumes? ....

4 How could Ancient Egyptians keep their mouths fresh all day? ....

Writing

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1 much – How – does – have – she – juice?

....

2 has – in – hand – The king – a long – his – scepter.

....

3 has – He – milk – in his – a little – coffee.

....

4 had – Sally – a lot – in her – of – books – room.

....

7 Punctuate the following:

ancient Egyptians made mint candies

....

8 Write a paragraph of about 50–60 words using the following guiding elements:

مجاب عنه آخر الكتاب

"Salt dough recipe"

plain flour – 3 hours for cooking

....
....
....
....



< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practice more	Solve more exams	Well done!

DECEMBER MONTHLY TEST





Listening

1 Listen and write (True) or (False):

1 Sara traveled to London with her family. ( )
2 Marco Polo was an Egyptian explorer. ( )
3 Marco Polo is one of the first people to travel to China. ( )

2 Listen and complete:

1 I use 450 grams of ....
2 I use 40 drops of perfume ....
3 I use popsicle sticks to hold the .... up in the glasses.

Reading

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Did Hana .... her homework?
a) do b) doing c) does d) did

2 Marco Polo is a famous Italian ....
a) doctor b) painter c) singer d) explorer

3 "........................." are the people who look after and clean a building.
a) Kings b) Queens c) Caretakers d) Princes

4 A: .... many apples do you need? B: I need six apples.
a) When b) How c) What d) Where

4 Read and match (A) with (B):

A

1 They rode their ...
2 Yesterday, I had an amazing experience.
3 "Barley" is a plant ...
4 A: How much milk do we need?

B

a. ( ) some sugar and honey.
b. ( ) B: We need a little milk.
c. ( ) I went on a felucca on the Nile.
d. ( ) whose seeds we can use to make bread and other things.
e. ( ) bikes at the park yesterday.

5 Read the text and answer the questions:

Local people in a small village in Nigeria called Nok found some unusual objects under the ground almost 100 years ago. They found beautiful clay sculptures of humans. The sculptures were all in the same style. They had large eyes. They were in a sitting position with their hands on their legs.

They also found iron and stone farming tools. These were from an advanced culture from around 500 B.C.E. to 200 C.E. They called the culture the "Nok" civilization.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The village is in ....

a) Egypt b) France c) Nigeria d) China

2 The local people found some unusual .... under the ground.

a) objects b) toys c) vegetables d) books

B Answer the following questions:

3 What did the sculptures look like? ....

4 What did they call the culture? ....

Writing

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1 they – How – do – need – sugar – much?

....

2 aren't – in – tigers – There – any – Egypt.

....

3 I – bag – found – my – the table – under.

....

4 lives – a palace – Peter – in – parents – with his.

....

7 Punctuate the following:

i had such a wonderful experience

....

8 Write a paragraph of about 50–60 words using the following guiding elements:

مجاب عنه آخر الكتاب

"Marco Polo"

explorer – China

....

....

....

....

TAPE SCRIPTS



UNIT 1

Practice on Lesson 1

A community garden is a big green space on the roof of an apartment block. The people who work there are all volunteers from the neighborhood. They grow vegetables to eat, and sometimes they sell them in the market, too! Roof gardens also help clean the air in the city, so that's good for people's health.

Practice on Lesson 2

My sister, Dalia, plays basketball twice a week, on Tuesdays and Thursdays. She has a gymnastics lesson once a week, on Saturdays. She also practices her gymnastics every day after school– she never misses a day! Twice a year, there's a big gymnastics competition in our region in December and June. Dalia always enters! Go Dalia!

Practice on Lesson 3

There was a giant who has a big garden. The selfish giant doesn't allow the children to play in his garden. So he builds a wall around his garden. Spring arrives in the village, but in the giant's garden, it is still winter. When the children come back, the leaves on the trees are green again. The giant understands that when you're not selfish, good things happen.

Practice on Lessons 4 & 5

I like Scotland, but there are lots of things I miss about Egypt–the warm, sunny weather, and especially the food! Scottish food is OK, but Egyptian food is better! For example, for breakfast, a lot of Scottish people eat porridge. They usually make it, with milk, and they sometimes put honey on it, but I really don't like it!

Test yourself on Unit 1

1. New York has a lot of green spaces, like the famous High Line. The High Line was a railway line, but in the 1980s, trains stopped using it. Now it's a green space with more than 500 species of plants and trees! It is 2.5 kms long.

2.

Nabila : Do you want to come to my house?

Mariam : Thanks, Nabila, but I always help my aunt on Friday afternoons at the community garden.

Nabila : What's that?

Mariam : It's a big green space on the roof of my Aunt Salma's apartment block.

Nabila : Who works there?

Mariam : The people who work there are all volunteers from the neighborhood.

UNIT 2

Practice on Lesson 1

I'm Hana. I help new students get to know the school. I take them around the school and show them where their classrooms are, and I help them with the books, too. I really like helping the new students. Sometimes they're nervous and shy.

Practice on Lesson 2

I'm Ahmed. I'm a student at El Fouad School. I'm in grade six. The school's buildings are modern and new. I study science in the Ahmed Zewail Building. We have a break in the West Court.

We have Information Technology lessons in the IT Building. We play basketball and handball in the gymnasium.

Practice on Lesson 3

My favorite story is about a hare, a monkey, an elephant, and a mouse. The mouse was in the hare's house. The mouse scared the hare and the monkey. They asked their friend, the elephant, to help them. The small mouse runs out of the house. The elephant cries and runs away. Everyone laughs at the end.

Practice on Lessons 4 & 5

I'm Ola. I have a pet cat. I think cats make the best pets. They are clean and calm animals. They are very beautiful. They have soft fur which is nice to touch. They are independent animals. You don't need to take them for a walk every day. When I pet my cat, it makes me feel happy.

Test yourself on Unit 2

1. The 2024 Gymnasium is the yellow building in our new school. We use it for basketball, handball, and gymnastics during Physical Education lessons. There are some teachers who run after school sports clubs here too, like five-a-side football (Mr Afifi, math department) and tennis (Mrs Manal, French department).
2. I'm Amira. I have a pet cat. Cats are my favorite animals. I like cats because they're beautiful, clean, and calm. They have soft fur. Their fur is nice to touch. Cats are independent. I don't need to take my cat for a walk every day. My cat makes me happy.

October Monthly Test

1. I went to my aunt's house yesterday. I always help her at the community garden. The community garden is a big green space on the roof of her apartment block. Lots of people volunteer to help. We grow vegetables. They eat them and they sometimes sell them in the market.
2. My name is Ola. I help new students get to know the school and their classrooms. I helped a new student yesterday. His name is Ali. He was very nervous and shy. I helped him to stay calm because we're all friendly.

UNIT 3

Practice on Lesson 1

Reem : Should we visit the Manial Palace Museum on Monday?

Rana : That's a great idea!

Reem : Let's ride on a rollercoaster on Tuesday.

Rana : Okay, cool! We can go quad biking in the desert in Giza.

Reem : How can we go there?

Rana : We can take the bus.

Practice on Lesson 2

Study for about 30 minutes, but no longer. If you try to study for hours, you can't concentrate. When you have regular breaks, you remember more. It's also better to study at the same time each day.

Practice on Lesson 3

Little Deer runs through the forest. He comes to a beautiful, blue lake and he decides to stop for a drink of water. Just then, he sees Wolf. Wolf has a drink from the lake. Little Deer can't drink from the lake because he is afraid of the wolf.

Practice on Lessons 4 & 5

Today is Nashwa's birthday. She is at the Carnival with her family. She wants to try a rollercoaster ride. The children's section has nine rides, including the Orient Train. They have tickets for that at 10 o'clock. It is a good way to see all of the park.

Test yourself on Unit 3

1. Amal wants to visit the Dome of Abu Al-Hawa with her cousin Fatima. Amal comes to Cairo to see famous places. Fatima wants to make her cousin happy, but she has a secret. She is afraid of heights. She doesn't want to disappoint Amal. So, Fatima decides to face her fear and go with her.
2. Sharm El-Sheikh is an interesting and busy town in Egypt by the Red Sea. There are lots of things to see and do. You can swim in the sea or relax at the beach. You can also visit St. Catherine's monastery or go quad biking in the desert.

UNIT 4

Practice on Lesson 1

I'm Mai. We are having a birthday party today for our little sister Rana. My brother Mazen is blowing up the balloons. My father is hanging up the streamers. My sister Eman is sending email invitations to our friends. My aunt Fatma is decorating the birthday cake. I am making the playlist on my phone.

Practice on Lesson 2

I'm Ali. I'm in grade six. I'm studying hard for my exams at the moment. I'm not spending all my free time studying. I'm going running every morning in the park. I'm cycling on the weekends with my brother. I'm trying to see my friends a few times a week, too.

Practice on Lesson 3

Some countries have different birthday food. In China, people like to eat long noodles or peaches on their birthday. Why? Because they think that these can give you a long life. And Chinese people are often older. Why? Because they become one on the day they are born. So if you are 10, a Chinese child is 11!

Practice on Lessons 4 & 5

I'm Sara. I'm in grade six. I like reading. I will attend the Book Day party. I will go with my friends. We will dress up as our favorite characters from our favorite books. There is an amazing prize for the best costume. There are drinks and delicious snacks at the party. The party will be next Thursday.

Test yourself on Unit 4

1. In the USA and Britain, it is usual to give good friends and family presents on their birthdays even when they are adults. In South Africa, 21 is an important birthday because you become an adult at this age. In Nigeria, the most important birthdays are when someone is one, 10, and 15.
2.

Sama : What are you doing, Dalia?
Dalia : I'm hanging up the streamers for my sister Noha's birthday.
Sama : Can I help you, cousin?
Dalia : Sure, can you blow up the balloons, please?
Sama : Of course!
Dalia : What is Mom doing? Is she helping?
Sama : Yes, she is decorating the cake.

November Monthly Test

1. We're traveling to Cairo next week. On Sunday, we can visit the Manial Palace Museum. On Monday, we can take photos for the school project. On Tuesday, we can go to the theme park and ride on a rollercoaster. On Wednesday, we can go quad biking in the desert in Giza.
2. Birthdays are celebrated all over the world. In Egypt we usually make birthday cakes for our children and put candles on them to show their ages. We often have parties with a lot of family and friends. The children usually get presents, too.

UNIT 5

Practice on Lesson 1

Rania has an interesting travel diary. She keeps it because she likes to remember her family's vacation in Croatia last year. They visited Marco Polo Museum. The museum is on an island. It's really an interesting place, and it's all about the travels of Marco Polo.

Practice on Lesson 2

Local people in Nok village found some unusual objects under the ground. These objects were beautiful clay sculptures of humans. The sculptures were all in the same style: they had large eyes and complicated hair styles. They were usually in a setting position.

Practice on Lesson 3

I read a nice story yesterday. It was a page from an 18th century writer's diary. He was traveling on a ship. He had a relaxing sleep in his cabin. The next morning, he had breakfast with others, then the ship left the port to a mysterious island.

Practice on Lessons 4 & 5

In the afternoon, we had a delicious lunch on board of the felucca, and there was a man playing traditional Egyptian music on an oud. He played beautifully, and the music was magical, dreamy, and relaxing. What a day! I had such a wonderful experience!

Test yourself on Unit 5

1. Yesterday, I had an amazing experience. I went on a felucca on the River Nile! A felucca is a traditional Egyptian sailing boat. It's made of wood. A tall man called Kareem was the captain of the boat. He was strong and had the skills to sail the felucca. I had such a wonderful experience!
2. I was sad all day yesterday. The weather was still bad, and there were strong winds. I went for long walks around the ship to pass the time during the day. In the evening, I had nothing to do but read my book by the light of a candle in my tiny cabin.

UNIT 6

Practice on Lesson 1

Mom and Laila were making some candles. First, they needed about 450 grams of wax to make three candles. They need about forty drops of perfume oil. Laila had lemon oil. It smelled lovely. They needed three wicks and three glasses. They also needed three popsicle sticks to hold the wicks.



Practice on Lesson 2

I'm Radwa. I want to make chocolate chip cookies. I need 180 grams of flour and a little salt. I will mix them with butter and 150 grams of sugar. I also need one egg and a few drops of vanilla essence. I love chocolate chip cookies.

Practice on Lesson 3

Peter lives in a big palace where his parents are the caretakers. The palace is old, and no one lives there now. A lot of the rooms are closed and mysterious, but Peter likes to explore them. They are full of interesting and precious things – old paintings, statues, carpets, and furniture.

Practice on Lessons 4 & 5

Here are the instructions for making salt dough. First, you need 1 cup of plain flour, ½ a cup of salt, and ½ a cup of water. Heat the oven on a low temperature. Mix the flour and salt in a large bowl. Add a little water, then a little more, and stir the mixture until it starts to form a ball.

Test yourself on Unit 6

1. The Ancient Egyptians loved strong perfumes. The most popular perfume was called "Kapet". It was expensive because it had a lot of ingredients. But it also had a few common herbs and spices in it. Cheaper perfumes were made from flowers, herbs, and some types of minerals, then mixed with oil to make a cream.
2. Mom : Ahmed, will you come to the market with me?

   Ahmed : Yes, of course. What do we need to buy?

   Mom : We need to buy tomatoes and some fruits.

   Ahmed : How many tomatoes do we need?

   Mom : We need a kilo of tomatoes, a few lemons, and some apples.

   Ahmed : OK, Mom.

December Monthly Test

1. I'm Sara. Last month, I traveled to Croatia with my family. My favorite place that I visited was the Marco Polo Museum. Marco Polo was an Italian explorer. He's one of the first people from the West to visit China. It's very interesting because China is very far away.
2. I can make candles. To make candles, I use 450 grams of wax. I use 40 drops of perfume oil. I also use flowers to press on the top of the candles. I put the melted, hot wax in glasses with wicks. I use popsicle sticks to hold the wicks up in the glasses.

WRITING ANSWERS



UNIT 1

Practice on Lesson 1

"Our community garden"

I help my mother on Sunday at the community garden. It's a big green space on the roof of our apartment block. We grow vegetables to eat. We can grow tomatoes, peppers, onions, lettuce – things people eat all the time. We sell them in the market. Sometimes we also grow fruit trees like lemons and dates. We can grow our own fresh food.

Practice on Lesson 2

"Mini Forest"

Mini Forest is an organization which plants small areas of trees in the middle of our cities. It always works hard to find the best urban locations for our forests. The organization plants trees that grow naturally in an area and it carefully looks after them until they become a small forest. These green areas help people enjoy nature and help our wildlife.

Practice on Lesson 3

"The High Line"

The High Line was a railway line in New York. In the 1980s, trains stopped using it. Some local residents decided to make the old railway into a big, long park that everyone could use. People can walk through it. They can see art works, watch a theater performance, or eat delicious food. They can do a yoga class or go running.

Practice on Lessons 4 & 5

From : sara@scotlandmail.com

To : ola@egyptmail.com

Subject : My new life in Scotland

Hi Ola,

How are things with you?

I'm finally in Scotland with my family. Our apartment is in the city center. It has a great view over parks. The people here are nice and I have a lot of new friends at school. I like Scotland, but there are lots of things I miss about Egypt. I miss our delicious food and the sunny weather. Please write back soon and tell me all the news from home.

Lots of love,

Sara

Test yourself on Unit 1

"Daily routine"

I always wake up at 7 o'clock in the morning. I usually have breakfast at 8 o'clock. I go to my office by bus. I sometimes have lunch at my office. I never leave the office late. I often go to the theater after work. I go back home at 4 o'clock. I sometimes read a book then I always go to bed at 8 o'clock.

UNIT 2

Practice on Lesson 1

"Helping new students at school"

New school students often feel nervous and shy because it's their first day at school. I like to help new students get to know the school. I usually show them around where their classes are. I sometimes stay with them in the break, too. We can share our textbooks with them when they don't have their books yet. My friends are happy when they help new students because we are friendly.

Practice on Lesson 2

"Your school"

I am proud of my school. We have new and modern buildings in our school. There are two laboratories in my school. We study science there. These laboratories have all the equipment which classes need to do experiments. There is a big gymnasium in our school. We use it to play basketball, handball, and gymnastics during Physical Education lessons.

Practice on Lesson 3

"Your favorite story"

"Hare gets scared" is my favorite story. It is about a Hare that is hungry and wants to go to her house to get some carrots to eat. There is somebody in her house who wants to eat her. She is scared. She asks for her friends' help. Monkey and Elephant try to help her. They find out it is just a small mouse in her house!

Practice on Lessons 4&5

"Your favorite pet"

My favorite pet is the cat. I think cats are the best pets. They are beautiful with soft fur which is nice to touch. They are clean and calm animals which are usually friendly. They like people but they are independent, so you don't need to take them for a walk every day. Having a cat at your home makes you happy.

Test yourself on Unit 2

"Your school"

I am proud of my school. There are new and modern buildings in my school. There are IT buildings, laboratories and new gymnasium and the West Court. My favorite place is the West Court. We can spend time outside. There is a playground and a playing field. There are also benches to sit on under the trees and a water fountain if we feel thirsty.

October Monthly Test

From : nour@gmail.com
To : nada@gmail.com
Subject : My community garden

Hi, Nada

How are things with you?

I want to tell you about my community garden. A community garden is a big green space on the roof of apartment blocks. People who work there are all volunteers from the neighborhood. They usually plant vegetables and fruits. They grow their own food. It is fresh and organic. They can sell them in the market, too. It's a great place to meet people and make friends.

UNIT 3

Practice on Lesson 1

"My summer vacation"

I want to spend my summer vacation in Cairo. There are a lot of things to do and see there. I want to visit the Manial Palace Museum because I can take photos for my school project. I want to go quad biking in the desert. I want to climb the Bab Zuweila minaret and I want to explore the souks, too.

Practice on Lesson 2

"What are your top tips for studying?"

I think we should study for about 30 minutes but no longer. We can have regular breaks to remember and concentrate more. It's also better to study at the same time each day. We shouldn't study when we're hungry. It's helpful if we write down what we want to do each time we study. Then we can check it off after we finish.



Practice on Lesson 3

"Fatima's visit to the Dome of Abu Al-Hawa"

Fatima goes with her cousin Amal to the Dome of Abu Al-Hawa. They go there on Tuesday. After a long climb, they reach the top. Fatima is afraid of heights. Her face is white. She is very scared. Amal takes her hand and smiles. She asks her to breathe slowly. Fatima feels calmer. She lifts her head to look at the incredible view.

Practice on Lessons 4 & 5

A day at the Carnival

I go to the Carnival on Friday. I go with my family. There is a lot to see and do there. There are amazing rides to try like the rollercoaster, and theaters where we can watch shows and concerts. There are places to eat and stores, too. There are Waterfalls rides and simulation theaters. I can try the Orient Train ride, too.

Test yourself on Unit 3

"A place you would like to visit"

I would like to visit Sharm El-Sheikh with my family. Sharm El-Sheikh is an interesting town in Egypt by the Red Sea. There are lots of things to see and do. I can swim in the sea and relax on the beach. I can go quad biking in the desert. I can visit St Catherine's monastery. I can eat delicious food. I love Sharm El-Sheikh.

UNIT 4

Practice on Lesson 1

"My sister's birthday"

Today is my sister's birthday. We are having a busy day. My mom is decorating the birthday cake. My cousin Ola is hanging up the streamers. My brother Hani is blowing up the balloons. My aunt is making a nice playlist. I am sending everyone email invitations. We are all happy.

Practice on Lesson 2

From : nadia@mail.com

To : heba@mail.com

Subject : My exams

Hi Heba,
How are things?
I'm studying for my final exams these days. I spend around three hours studying every day. But don't worry, I like to spend some time outdoors, too. I am going running in the morning. I'm also cycling with my dad.
Write soon to tell me your news,
Nadia.

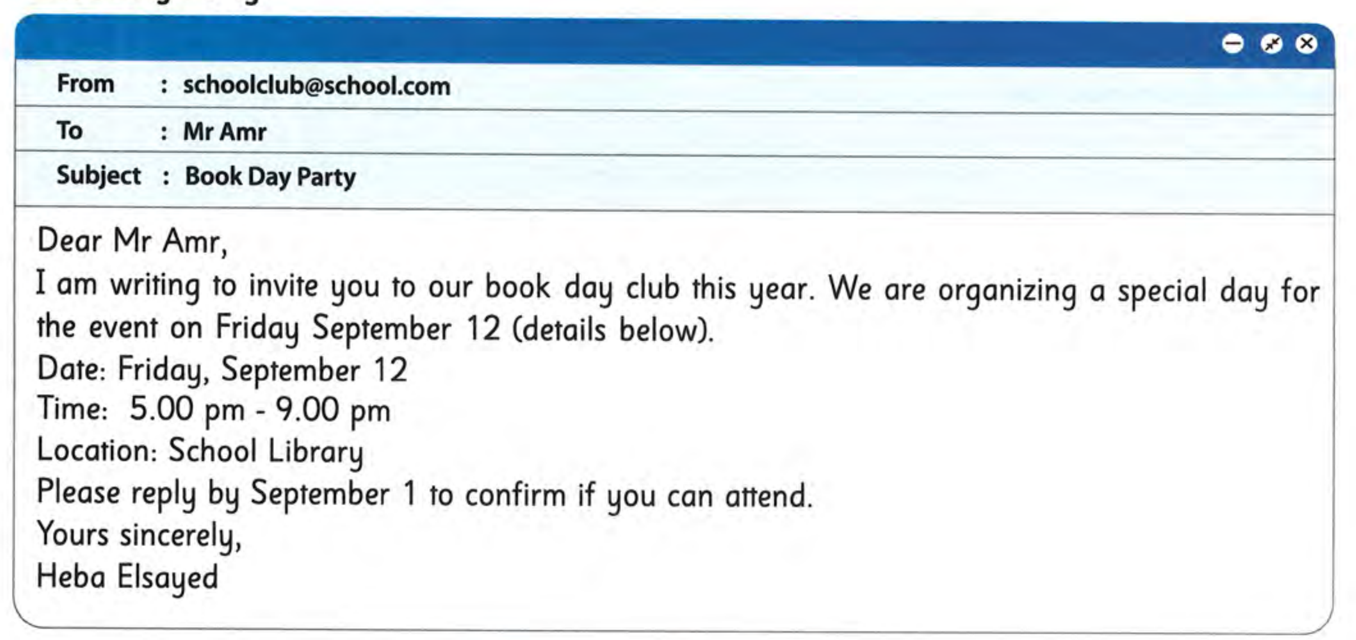
Practice on Lesson 3

"Birthday parties in Egypt"

Birthdays are celebrated around the world. In Egypt, we usually make birthday cakes for our children and put candles on them to show their age. We often have parties with a lot of family and friends. The children usually get a present, too.

Practice on Lessons 4 & 5

"Book Day Party"



From : schoolclub@school.com

To : Mr Amr

Subject : Book Day Party

Dear Mr Amr,

I am writing to invite you to our book day club this year. We are organizing a special day for the event on Friday September 12 (details below).

Date: Friday, September 12

Time: 5.00 pm - 9.00 pm

Location: School Library

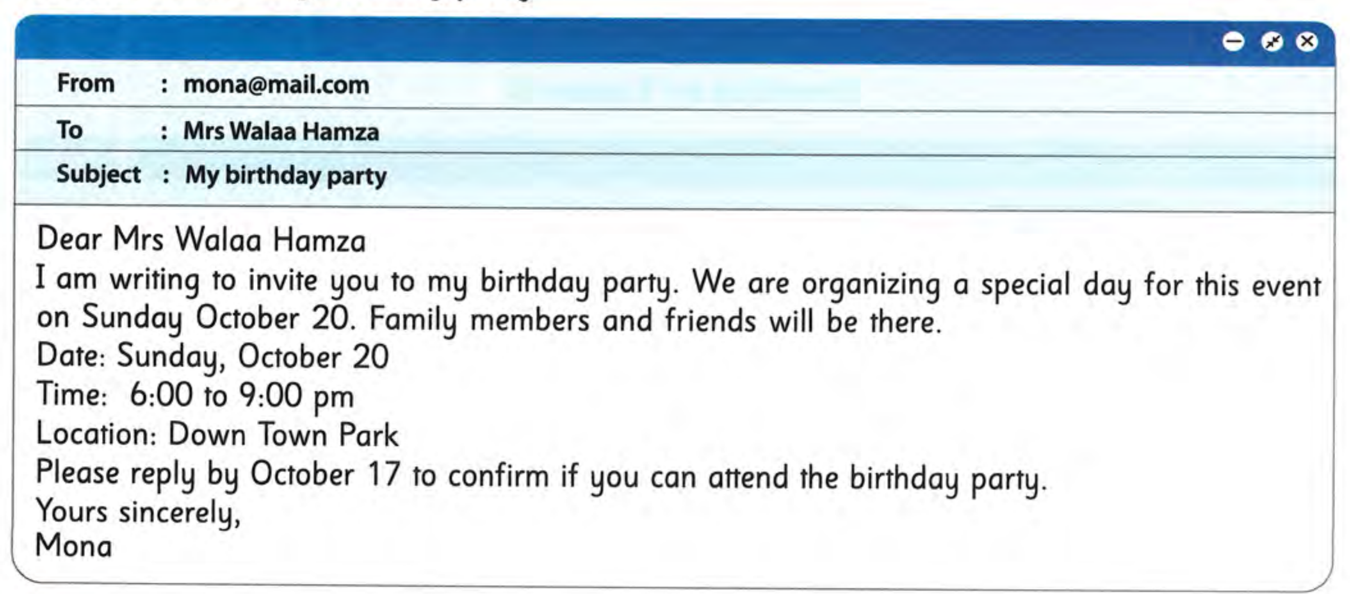
Please reply by September 1 to confirm if you can attend.

Yours sincerely,

Heba Elsayed

Test yourself on Unit 4

"An invitation to my birthday party"



From : mona@mail.com

To : Mrs Walaa Hamza

Subject : My birthday party

Dear Mrs Walaa Hamza

I am writing to invite you to my birthday party. We are organizing a special day for this event on Sunday October 20. Family members and friends will be there.

Date: Sunday, October 20

Time: 6:00 to 9:00 pm

Location: Down Town Park

Please reply by October 17 to confirm if you can attend the birthday party.

Yours sincerely,

Mona



November Monthly Test

" A vacation in Cairo"

Yesterday I went to Cairo for a vacation. I went with my family. We saw many interesting places. We were very happy. We took photos at the Manial Palace Museum. We visited Cairo Tower. We climbed the Bab Zuwelia minaret. We explored the souks.

UNIT 5

Practice on Lesson 1

"Marco Polo"

Marco Polo is a famous Italian explorer. He is one of the first people from the West to visit China. He went there in the 13^{th} century and wrote a diary about his experiences. It's called "The Travels of Marco Polo".

Practice on Lesson 2

"Nok Civilization"

Almost 100 years ago, local people in the small village of Nok in Nigeria, a country in West Africa, found some unusual objects under the ground. These objects were beautiful clay sculptures of humans. The sculptures were all in the same style: they had large eyes and complicated hair styles.

Practice on Lesson 3

"Gobi Desert"

The Gobi Desert is a mysterious and dangerous place. By day, it is boiling hot, by night, it is freezing cold. Sometimes there is snow. There are many sand dunes. Some of them are about 60 meters tall. The wind makes them move and roll like huge yellow waves. Local people call Gobi Desert "the dry sea".

Practice on Lessons 4 & 5

"My trip to Al-Fayoum"

Yesterday, I had an amazing experience. I went on a trip to Al-Fayoum. My friends and I went on a boat trip on Qarun Lake. I met a serious man called Kareem. He was the captain of the boat. We stopped by the waterfall. My friends were fascinated by the waterfall. It was such a peaceful trip.

Test yourself on Unit 5

"A felucca on the River Nile"

My friend Salma had such an amazing experience last weekend. She went on a felucca trip on the River Nile. It went slowly down the river in the warm sunshine. She stopped by the Pyramids of Giza and took many pictures there. At sunset, she had a delicious lunch on board the felucca.

UNIT 6

Practice on Lesson 1

"Instructions for making candles"

Here are the instructions for making the candles. First, you need some wax. You can use around 450 grams of wax to make 3 candles. You also need some perfume oil. You can use lemon oil. It smells lovely. Squeeze around 40 drops of oil on the wax. You will also need a wick for each candle.

Practice on Lesson 2

"Making chocolate chip cookies"

I'm Lama. I love making chocolate chip cookies. I need 180 grams of flour and a little salt. I'll mix them with butter and some sugar. I also need one egg and a few drops of vanilla essence.

Practice on Lesson 3

"Perfumes in Ancient Egypt"

The Ancient Egyptians loved strong perfumes. The most popular perfume was called "Kapet". It was expensive because it had a lot of ingredients, some of which were difficult to find. Cheaper perfumes were made from flowers, herbs, and some types of minerals, then mixed with oil to make a cream.

Practice on Lessons 4 & 5

"Egyptian flavors"

Egypt is famous for its spices that are used in home cooking. Families pass down special combinations of different spices as a secret ingredient in many recipes from generation to generation. We don't only use spices to cook food, we also use them in perfume and to color cloth.

Test yourself on Unit 6

"Salt dough recipe"

My name is Ali. I want to make salt dough. First, I need about 250g of plain flour, 125g of salt and about 125ml of water. I heat to oven on a low temperature. Then I mix the flour and salt in a large bowl. Then, I add a little water, then a little more and stir the mixture until it starts to form a ball.

December Monthly Test

"Marco Polo"

He was a famous Italian explorer and one of the first people from the West to visit China. He went there in the 13th century and wrote a diary about his experiences there. It's called *The Travels of Marco Polo*. It's full of amazing things about his adventures on his travels.





STUDENT'S BOOK LISTENING SCRIPTS

Nadine: What do you usually do on weekends, Gameela?

نادين: ماذا تفعلين عادة فى عطلات نهاية الأسبوع، جميلة؟

Gameela: I usually spend time with my sisters. We often go shopping in the city center, or we sometimes go to the movie theater. What about you?

جميلة: عادة ما أمضى بعض الوقت مع أخواتى. غالبًا ما نذهب للتسوق فى وسط المدينة، أو نذهب أحيانًا إلى مسرح الأفلام. ماذا عنك؟

Nadine: I don't very often go into the city. I usually stay at home and help my mom, but I sometimes visit my grandparents with my sister, Injy, and her kids.

نادين: لا أذهب غالبًا إلى المدينة. عادة ما أبقى فى المنزل وأساعد أمى، ولكننى أحيانًا أزور جدى وجدتى مع أختى إنجى وأطفالها.

Gameela: Where do your grandparents live, Nadine?

جميلة: أين يعيش أجدادك، نادين؟

Nadine: They live in the countryside on a farm. It's near a town called Asyut. Do you know it? It's on the river Nile.

نادين: يعيشون فى الريف، فى مزرعة بالقرب من بلدة تسمى أسيوط. هل تعرفينها؟ إنها على نهر النيل.

Gameela: Asyut? That's a long way from here. How often do you see them?

جميلة: أسيوط؟ إنها بعيدة عن هنا. كم مرة تزورينهم؟

Nadine: About once a month. My sister can drive so she usually takes me in her car. And we always try to meet up for the holiday at Eid al-Adh too. We usually stay for a week at their house then.

نادين: حوالى مرة فى الشهر. أختى يمكنها أن تقود السيارة لذلك هى تأخذنى عادة فى سيارتها. ونحاول دائمًا الالتقاء بالعطلة فى عيد الأضحى أيضًا. عادة ما نبقى لمدة أسبوع فى منزلهم.

Gameela: I love Eid al-Adh! We always meet up with my mom's family for the holiday. They are all great cooks and we always eat a lot!

جميلة: أحب عيد الأضحى! دائمًا ما نلتقى بعائلة أمى فى العطلة. كلهم طهاة رائعون ونأكل دائمًا الكثير!

Nadine: That sounds great!

نادين: هذا يبدو رائعًا!

Gameela: What about this weekend, Nadine? Are you busy?

جميلة: ماذا عن عطلة نهاية الأسبوع هذه، نادين؟ هل أنتِ مشغولة؟

Nadine: Not really. Do you want to do something together?

نادين: ليس بالضبط. هل تريدين أن نفعل شيئًا معًا؟

Gameela: Yes, let's go to that new café in our neighborhood. It's near the square.

جميلة: نعم، لنذهب إلى هذا المقهى الجديد فى حينا. إنه بالقرب من الميدان.

Nadine: Yes, okay. It looks nice and they have delicious date and honey cakes! Saturday afternoon?

نادين: نعم، حسنًا. يبدو لطيفًا ولديهم كعكات بلح وعسل لذيذة! بعد ظهر يوم السبت؟

Gameela: Yes, that sounds great. I'll text you.

جميلة: نعم، يبدو ذلك رائعًا. سأرسل لكِ رسالة.



Samer: Dad, here's the information I found online about quad biking in the desert.

سامر: أبي، إليك المعلومات التي وجدتها عبر الإنترنت حول ركوب الدراجات الرباعية في الصحراء.

Dad: Oh, thanks Samer. Show me.

الأب: أوه، شكرًا سامر. أرني.

Samer: The company is called Desert Adventures. When you look at their website, the information is here. Look. The tour guide will meet us at the hotel.

سامر: تسمى الشركة «مغامرات الصحراء». عندما تنظر إلى موقعهم الإلكتروني، فإن المعلومات موجودة هنا. انظر. سيجتمع المرشد السياحي معنا في الفندق.

Dad: OK. What time will he meet us?

الأب: حسنًا. ما هو الوقت الذي سيجتمع به معنا؟

Samer: He'll meet us at 9 am and he'll drive us into the desert.

سامر: سوف يلتقي بنا في التاسعة صباحًا وسيقودنا إلى الصحراء.

Dad: And what time do we get back?

الأب: وما هو الوقت الذي نعود فيه؟

Samer: We should be back around 2 pm. Lunch is included in the price. Should we take some water?

سامر: يجب أن نعود حوالي الساعة ٢ مساء. السعر يشمل وجبة الغداء. هل يجب أن نأخذ بعض الماء؟

Dad: Yes. Good idea. How big is the group?

الأب: نعم. فكرة جيدة. كم عدد المجموعة؟

Samer: It'll be a group of six.

سامر: ستكون مجموعة من ستة أفراد.

Dad: I like the photos. Everyone is wearing helmets. That's good. You have to wear a helmet if you ride a quad bike. How long do we ride the quad bikes for?

الأب: أحب الصور. الجميع يرتدون الخوذات. هذا جيد. عليك ارتداء خوذة إذا كنت تركب دراجة رباعية. كم من الوقت نركب الدراجات الرباعية؟

Samer: One of the trips is 45 minutes, but there's also a trip for an hour. Can we do the hour tour, Dad?

سامر: زمن الرحلة الواحدة ٤٥ دقيقة، ولكن هناك أيضًا رحلة لمدة ساعة. هل يمكننا القيام بجولة لمدة ساعة يا أبي؟

Dad: Yes, of course. This is going to be a lot of fun. Remember to listen to the guide's instructions so that you stay safe.

الأب: نعم، بالطبع. سيكون ذلك ممتعًا للغاية. تذكر أن تستمع إلى تعليمات المرشد حتى تحافظ على سلامتك.

Samer: Yes, I will Dad.

سامر: نعم، سأفعل يا أبي.

Dad: Good! How do we book the tour if we can't book it on the website?

الأب: جيدا! كيف نحجز الجولة إذا لم نتمكن من حجزها على الموقع الإلكتروني؟

Samer: We can book it at the office in town. If we book the tour today, it's cheaper. We get a 10% discount.

سامر: يمكننا حجزها في المكتب في المدينة. إذا قمنا بحجز الجولة اليوم، فهذا أرخص. نحصل على خصم ١٠٪.

Dad: Great. Can you pass me my wallet? I need my credit card to pay for the tickets. Let's go to the office now

الأب: رائع. هل يمكنك أن تمرر لي محفظتي؟ أحتاج إلى بطاقة الائتمان الخاصة بي لدفع ثمن التذاكر. لنذهب الآن إلى المكتب.

Samer: Sure Dad. Here you are.

سامر: نعم يا أبي، تفضل.

Hana: Hi. My name's Hana. I get up every day at 6 o'clock. I have breakfast with my family at 6.30 in the morning. I go to the library on Saturday and I play sports on Sunday. I do homework on Tuesday.

هانا: مرحبًا. اسمى هانا. أستيقظ كل يوم عند الساعة السادسة. أتناول وجبة إفطار مع عائلتى فى الساعة ٦،٣٠ صباحًا. أذهب إلى المكتبة يوم السبت وأمارس الرياضة يوم الأحد. أقوم بالواجبات المنزلية يوم الثلاثاء.

Youssef: Hi. I'm Youssef. I get up every day at 7 o'clock. I have breakfast with my grandparents at 7.30 in the morning. I don't go to the library but I play sports on Saturday. I do homework on Thursday.

يوسف: مرحبًا. أنا يوسف. أستيقظ كل يوم فى الساعة السابعة. أتناول وجبة إفطار مع جدىّ فى الساعة السابعة والنصف صباحًا. لا أذهب إلى المكتبة ولكننى ألعب الرياضة يوم السبت. أقوم بالواجبات المنزلية يوم الخميس.

Maggie: Hello. My name's Maggie. I get up every day at 6.30 and I have breakfast with my family at 7 o'clock. I go to the library on Sunday in the afternoon. I don't play sports. I do homework on Monday and Wednesday.

ماجى: مرحبًا. اسمى ماجى. أستيقظ كل يوم فى الساعة ٦،٣٠ وأتناول الإفطار مع عائلتى عند الساعة السابعة. أذهب إلى المكتبة يوم الأحد بعد الظهر. لا أمارس الرياضة. أقوم بالواجبات المنزلية يومى الإثنين والأربعاء.

Nader: Hi. I'm Nader. I get up every day at 8 o'clock. I have breakfast with my sister at 8.15, then we go to school. I don't go to the library because I have a lot of books at home. I play sports on Wednesday. I do homework every day.

نادر: مرحبًا. أنا نادر. أستيقظ كل يوم فى الساعة ٨. أتناول وجبة إفطار مع أختى فى ٨،١٥، ثم نذهب إلى المدرسة. لا أذهب إلى المكتبة لأن لدى الكثير من الكتب فى المنزل. أمارس الرياضة يوم الأربعاء. أقوم بالواجبات المنزلية كل يوم.

Unit 5 Lesson 3

Marco Polo was twenty-one when, in 1275, he went into the Gobi Desert for the first time. He was fascinated by the sand dunes, which moved with each step the camels made. Some of the dunes were sixty meters tall and twenty meters long, and their shapes were always changing. The wind made them move and roll like huge yellow waves. In fact, the local people called the Gobi Desert 'the dry sea' in their language. The dromedaries in the caravan moved slowly up and down the dunes, swaying like big ships over the ocean. They went toward Lop Nur, the last village before the empty wasteland of the desert. Marco knew that after this place, there was nothing for thousands of kilometers – no people, no plants, no water.

It was a mysterious and dangerous place. By day, it was boiling hot, by night, it was freezing cold–sometimes there was snow. They went on silently, but often the wind made strange noises, like voices singing and drums playing far away. There were many strange legends about this desert. People said that travelers who were lost long ago in the desert wandered there still...

Before they left Lop Nur, Marco made sure they had enough food and water for the men and the animals to last for one month. After exactly thirty days of traveling across that frightening, empty land, they finally saw the green line of Noah Oasis on the horizon. They had no water and no food left and the animals were exhausted, but their desert adventure was over. They were in China!

كان ماركو بولو فى الواحدة والعشرين عندما دخل فى صحراء غوبى لأول مرة فى عام ١٢٧٥. كان مفتونًا بالكثبان الرملية التى تحركت مع كل خطوة قامت بها الجمال. وكان طول بعض الكثبان الرملية ستين مترًا وطول بعضها ٢٠ مترًا، وكانت أشكالها تتغير دائمًا. الرياح جعلتها تتحرك وتتدحرج مثل الأمواج الصفراء الضخمة. فى الواقع، أطلق السكان المحليون اسم «البحر الجاف» على صحراء غوبى بلغتهم. تحركت الجمال فى القافلة ببطء إلى أعلى وأسفل الكثبان الرملية، متمايلة مثل السفن الكبيرة فوق المحيط. ذهبت نحو «لوب نور»، القرية الأخيرة قبل أرض الصحراء الفارغة. عرف ماركو أنه بعد هذا المكان لم يكن هناك شىء لآلاف الكيلومترات - لا أشخاص ولا نباتات ولا ماء.

كان مكانًا غامضًا وخطيرًا. فى النهار، كان يغلى ساخنًا، ليلًا، كان باردًا - فى بعض الأحيان كان هناك ثلج. ذهبوا بصمت، ولكن فى كثير من الأحيان كانت الرياح تصدر أصواتًا غريبة، مثل أصوات الغناء والطبول التى تعزف بعيدًا. كانت هناك العديد من الأساطير الغريبة حول هذه الصحراء. قال الناس إن المسافرين الذين فقدوا منذ فترة طويلة فى الصحراء كانوا يتجولون ...

قبل أن يغادروا «لوب نور»، تأكد ماركو من أن لديهم ما يكفى من الطعام والماء للرجال والحيوانات ليدوم لمدة شهر. بعد ثلاثين يومًا بالضبط من السفر عبر هذه الأرض الفارغة والمخيفة، رأوا أخيرًا الخط الأخضر لواحة «نوح» فى الأفق. لم يكن لديهم ماء ولا بقايا طعام والحيوانات مرهقة، ولكن مغامرتهم فى الصحراء قد انتهت. كانوا فى الصين!

رقم الإيداع: 15384 / 2023

